Polestar 2
—
Manual

Start

This car is the meeting point of design, technology and innovation. Every aspect is designed to offer unparalleled performance.

Please read the Manual, in order to both optimise your experience with the Polestar 2, and to learn everything you need to know about it. Manuals and other instructions can be found on the Polestar Support Site (polestar.com/manual) and via the Polestar app.

Please read the Manual, in order to both optimise your experience with the Polestar 2, and to learn everything you need to know about it. Manuals and other instructions can be found on the Polestar Support Site (polestar.com/manual).

Table of contents

Section 01
—
Manual information

Available information

Polestar works continuously to develop the user information. The information is available when you need it in several different product formats.

The car's centre display

The complete and current information for your car is always available in the car's centre display.

To access the Manual – tap on and then on .

Find information by:

- using the search function
- visually navigating using exterior and interior images
- clicking through categories.

The manual contains important safety instructions. Polestar recommends that you read the information under each category in its entirety before driving for the first time.

Polestar's support site

Go to polestar.com/manual and select your country. The Manual can be found online here. The Polestar support site also has instruction videos and further information and assistance relating to your Polestar and your car ownership.

On the support site you can find:

- online version of the Manual
- popular articles
- video tutorials.

The support site is updated with the latest information and is available for most markets.

Printed information

In the car's glovebox you will find printed information of selected topics that can be practical to have when, for example, you do not have access to the centre display or the support site.

Depending on equipment level selected, market, etc. additional manual information may also be available in printed format in the car.

Related information

- Reading the Manual (p. 12)

IMPORTANT

The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven safely in traffic and that applicable laws and regulations are followed. It is also important that the car is maintained and handled in accordance with Polestar's recommendations in the manual information.

If there should be a difference between the information in the centre display and the printed information then it is always the information in the centre display that applies.

Information in the centre display for your car may differ from the information shown on the Polestar support site.

NOTE

- The digital Manual is not available while driving.
- Changing the language in the centre display may mean that some manual information is not compliant with national or local laws and regulations.

Polestar support

The support site includes information on logging in to the Polestar website and contact details, for example.

Support on the Internet

Go to polestar.com/manual to visit the site.

It contains support for e.g. in-car-apps, functions and online services. Videos and step-by-step instructions explain different procedures, e.g. how to connect the car to a phone. Here there is also information about accessories and software adapted for your car model.

Polestar Customer Support

The support site contains contact information for Polestar Customer Support.

Contact can be made via phone, web form or the chat function on the website.

All available phone numbers for support can be found on the support site for each market on polestar.com.

Polestar Assistance

Polestar Assistance can offer assistance in the event of a breakdown, or when your car unexpectedly becomes immobilised. Polestar Assistance is available 24 hours a day, seven days a week throughout the year.

Press the Connect button in the car or use the Polestar app to make contact with Polestar Assistance.

Press the Connect button in the car or use the 极星 app to make contact with Polestar Assistance.

Website

Create a personal Polestar ID and go to polestar.com, where it is possible to get an overview of service, agreements and warranties, among other things. Here there is also information about accessories and software adapted for your car model.

Related information

- Contact Polestar (p. 16)
- Polestar ID (p. 16)

Reading the Manual

To help you get to know your new car, read the Manual before you drive it for the first time.

Reading the Manual is a way to become familiar with new functions, get advice on how to handle the car in different situations and learn how to make use of all the car's features. Please pay attention to the safety instructions and important prompts contained in the Manual. The different sections should be read in their entirety.

The intention of this Manual is to explain all possible functions, options and accessories included in a Polestar vehicle. It is not intended as an indication or guarantee that all of these features, functions and options are included in every vehicle. Some terminology used may not exactly match terminology used in sales, marketing and advertising materials.

Development work is constantly underway in order to improve our product. Modifications may mean that information, descriptions and illustrations in the Manual differ from the equipment in the car. We reserve the right to make modifications without prior notice.

Options/accessories

In addition to standard equipment, the Manual also describes options (factory fitted equipment) and certain accessories (retrofitted extra equipment).

All, at the time of publication known, options and accessories are marked with an asterisk: *.

The equipment described in the Manual is not available in all cars - they have different equipment depending on adaptations for the needs of different markets and national or local laws and regulations.

In the event of uncertainty over what is standard or an option/accessory, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Special texts

Decals

The car contains different types of decal which are designed to convey important information in a clear manner. The decals in the car have the following descending degree of importance for the warning/information.

Warning of personal injury

Black ISO symbols on yellow warning field, white text/image on black message field. Used to indicate the presence of danger which, if the warning is ignored, may result in serious personal injury or fatality.

Risk of property damage

White ISO symbols and white text/image on black or blue warning field and message field. Used to indicate the presence of danger which, if the warning is ignored, may result in damage to property.

Information

White ISO symbols and white text/image on black message field.

Illustrations and video clips

Illustrations and video clips used in the Manual are sometimes schematic and are intended to provide an overall picture or example of a certain function. They may deviate from the car's appearance depending on equipment level and market.

Related information

- Available information (p. 10)
- Polestar support (p. 11)

WARNING

Warning texts appear if there is a risk of injury.

IMPORTANT

Important texts appear if there is a risk of damage.

NOTE

- Information in the centre display for your car may differ from the information shown on the Polestar support site.
- Note texts give advice or tips that facilitate the use of e.g. features and functions.
- It is not intended that the decals illustrated in the Manual should be exact replicas of those in the car. They are included to show their approximate appearance and location in the car. The information that applies to your particular car is available on the respective decals for your car.

Section 02

—

Your Polestar

Contact Polestar

Use the following contact information to contact Polestar.

Polestar HQ

Assar Gabrielssons Väg 9

SE-405 31 Gothenburg

Sweden

020-79 77 89

polestar.com/se

Polestar HQ

Assar Gabrielssons Väg 9

SE-405 31 Gothenburg

Sweden

020-79 77 89

polestar.com

In the USA:

Polestar Automotive USA Inc.

Customer Support

777 MacArthur Blvd.

Mahwah, NJ 07430

1-800-806-2504

polestar.com/us

In Canada:

Polestar Automotive Canada Inc.

5200, Boulevard des Laurentides

Laval, QC

H7K 2J8

1-800-806-2507

polestar.com/en-ca

Polestar ID

Polestar ID is a personal ID that gives access to various services via a single username and password.

One example of a service requiring a Polestar ID is when you want to check your car on your phone using the Polestar app.

One example of a service requiring a Polestar ID is when you want to check your car on your phone using the 极星 app.

A Polestar ID is created on the website, polestar.com or in the Polestar app.

A Polestar ID is created on the website, polestar.com or in the 极星 app.

Related information

- Creating a Polestar ID (p. 17)
- Problems logging in with Polestar ID (p. 18)
- Book service and repair (p. 646)

NOTE

- The services available may vary over time and depend on equipment level and market.
- If the username/password for a service (e.g. Polestar Connect) is changed, then it is also changed automatically for other services.

Creating a Polestar ID

It is possible to create a Polestar ID in different ways.

Create a Polestar ID with the Polestar app

It is possible to create a Polestar ID using the Polestar app.

1. Download the latest version of the Polestar app to your phone, via e.g. the App Store or Google Play.
2. Choose to create a Polestar ID.
3. The website for Polestar ID creation opens. Fill in the requested information.
4. Tick the box to accept the terms and conditions.
5. Press the button to create a Polestar ID.
6. An email/SMS message is sent to the address/mobile number given. Follow the steps provided in the message to confirm.
   > Your Polestar ID is now ready to be used.

Create a Polestar ID with the 极星 app

It is possible to create a Polestar ID using the 极星 app.

1. Download the latest version of the 极星 app to your phone, via e.g. the App Store or Baidu App Store.
2. Choose to create a Polestar ID.
3. The website for Polestar ID creation opens. Fill in the requested information.
4. Tick the box to accept the terms and conditions.
5. Press the button to create a Polestar ID.
6. An email/SMS message is sent to the address/mobile number given. Follow the steps provided in the message to confirm.
   > Your Polestar ID is now ready to be used.

Creating a Polestar ID on the Polestar website

1. Go to polestar.com
2. Select login and once logged in select to create a Polestar ID.
3. The website for Polestar ID creation opens. Fill in the requested information.
4. Check the box to accept the terms and conditions.
5. Press the button to create a Polestar ID.
6. An email/SMS message is sent to the address/mobile number given. Follow the steps provided in the message to confirm.
   > Your Polestar ID is now ready to be used.

Related information

- Polestar ID (p. 16)
- Problems logging in with Polestar ID (p. 18)

Problems logging in with Polestar ID

This article describes problems that may arise when logging in with Polestar ID. If you have forgotten your password or the username linked to your Polestar ID, for example.

Common problems

Common problems and solutions when logging in with a Polestar ID are listed below.

Forgotten your password

To reset your password, follow the instructions below:

Via the Polestar website

1. Go to polestar.com
2. Select Sign in.
3. Select Forgotten password.
4. Enter the username for your Polestar ID (email address or mobile number).
   > You will receive an email/SMS with a link which you can use to set a new password.

In the Polestar app.

1. Start the Polestar app.
2. Select "Sign in".
3. Press "Forgotten password?" and follow the instructions.

In the 极星 app.

1. Start the 极星 app.
2. Select "Sign in".
3. Press "Forgotten password?" and follow the instructions.

Login failure after creation of a new account

Sometimes there may be a delay in the process which can result in an account not being available directly after it has been created. Try again after 24 hours, and if the problem persists contact Polestar Customer Support for more assistance.

What is my Polestar ID (username)?

Your Polestar ID is either an email address or a mobile number.

Unlock your Polestar ID

Your account will be locked after 5 failed attempts to log in. You can easily unlock your account by clicking on Forgotten password? in the login screen.

Login failure after changing Polestar ID (username)

Make sure you have received a confirmation message by email/SMS when you confirm your new username. Once this has been done, you should be able to login with the new user name. If you did not receive the confirmation message (by email or SMS), your old username is probably still in place. Log in and try to change your username again.

Login failure after changed password

Try to login with your previous password. If this is not successful, try to reset your password.

Account registered to a different market

An account is registered to a specific market and cannot be moved to a different market. To be able to re-use the same username (email address or mobile number), we advise you to first delete your account for the old market and then create a new account for the new market.

E-mail failure

If you did not receive a confirmation e-mail after registering, make sure that you entered a valid e-mail address and that the e-mail was not stopped by a spam filter. Try to register your e-mail address again.

More help

Contact Polestar Customer Support if you have not found a solution to a problem relating to Polestar ID and need further help.

Related information

- Polestar ID (p. 16)
- Creating a Polestar ID (p. 17)

Environmental efficiency

Polestar has undertaken to improve the environment by offering a product range that is clean and efficient and affects the environment as little as possible.

Improved environment, both inside and out

Polestar's environmental commitment also extends to the interior of the car, which is cleaned by the climate control system. An air filter in the air intake that stops pollen and dust, together with the air purification system in the car, is known as the Interior Air Quality System (IAQS) within Polestar. It also cleans the air in the interior of the car from hydrocarbons, ground-level ozone and nitrous oxides. The materials included in the fittings have been selected for their sustainability and have been tested to ensure that they do not give off strong odours or other pollution.

Cooperation for a cleaner future

All Polestar cars meet strict international environmental requirements, such as the production plants (which hold accreditation to ISO 14001) and all Polestar partners and staff. This ensures compliance with environmental laws and regulations while also guaranteeing ongoing improvements.

Related information

- Range (p. 469)
- Start and switch off preconditioning (p. 247)
- Air quality (p. 229)

Connection and entertainment

The car has an intelligent interface and offers online connectivity with the digital world. An intuitive navigation structure makes it possible to receive relevant support, information and entertainment when it is necessary, without distracting the driver.

Where Polestar is responsible for the provision of mobile connectivity services to enable use of certain functions, and excluding any separate contract for mobile connectivity services of the owner or any other user of the car that Polestar is not party to, each user understands and agrees that, to the extent permitted by law, it: (1) has no contractual relationship with the underlying wireless service carrier, (2) is not a third party beneficiary of any agreement between the car owner and the underlying carrier, (3) that the underlying carrier has no liability of any kind to the user, whether for breach of contract, warranty, negligence, strict liability in tort or otherwise, (4) that data transmissions and messages may be delayed, deleted or not delivered, and emergency calling may not be completed, (5) the underlying carrier cannot guarantee the security of wireless transmissions and will not be liable for any lack of security relating to the use of the services.

Fair Use Policy

Your use of connectivity services that are part of your vehicle is subject to this Fair Use Policy.

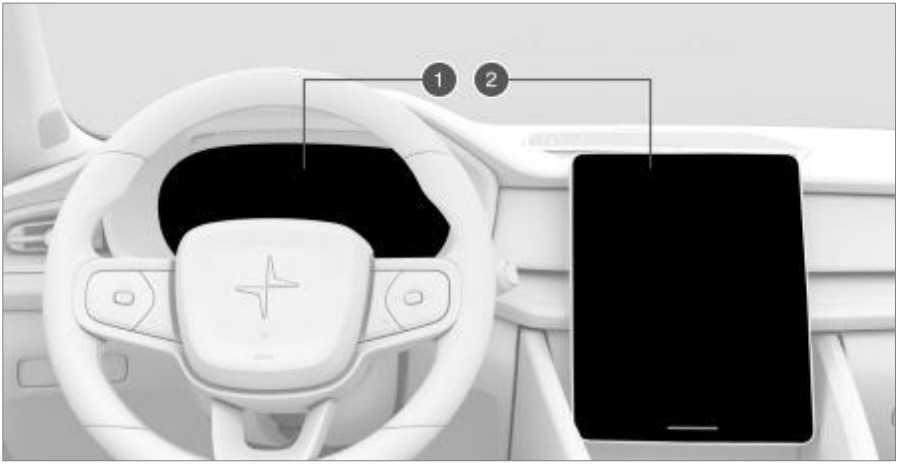
When using this Service you agree not to

- submit content that is unlawful, obscene, libellous, threatening, harassing, hateful, racially or ethnically offensive or otherwise inappropriate
- use the Service in breach of any applicable law
- use the Service for commercial purposes.

Your access to the Service is part of a shared access. Polestar reserves the right to suspend your access to or use of the Service if your use involves very high volumes of data, disproportionate to other users. Polestar may also suspend your access for technical reasons or to protect other functions of your vehicle. Your access to connectivity services is covered by third party terms and conditions from the mobile network service provider.

Information when it is needed, where it is needed

The different displays in the car provide information at the right time. The information is shown in different locations based on how it should be prioritised by the driver.



Different types of information are shown in different displays depending on how the information should be prioritised.

① The driver display shows information on speed, road sign information, warning and control symbols and information on the battery, for example. The driver display can also show incoming calls and navigation. The display is operated via the two steering wheel keypads.

② Many of the car's primary functions are controlled from the centre display, e.g. the climate control system, the entertainment system and the settings for the seats. The centre display also shows information on navigation and road sign information, for example. The information that is shown in the centre display can be acted on by the driver or someone else in the car when the opportunity arises.

Voice control system

The voice control system can be used without the driver needing to take his/her hands off the steering wheel. The system can understand natural speech. Use voice control to, for example, play back a song, call someone, increase the temperature or read out a text message.

Related information

- Driver display (p. 114)
- Overview of centre display (p. 146)
- Voice control with NUGU auto Assistant (p. 170)
- Voice control (p. 171)
- Voice control with Google Assistant (p. 172)

NOTE

Wearing gloves may restrict or impede touchscreen response.

Recording data

As part of Polestar's safety and quality assurance, certain information about the vehicle's operation, functionality and incidents are recorded in the car.

This vehicle is equipped with an "Event Data Recorder" (EDR). Its primary purpose is to register and record data related to traffic accidents or collision-like situations, such as times when the airbag deploys or the vehicle strikes an obstacle in the road. The data is recorded in order to increase understanding of how vehicle systems work in these types of situations. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short time, usually 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record data related to the following in the event of traffic accidents or collision-like situations:

- How the various systems in the car worked
- Whether the driver and passenger seatbelts were fastened/tensioned
- The driver's use of the accelerator or brake pedal
- The travel speed of the vehicle

This can help us understand the circumstances in which traffic accidents, injuries and damage occur. The EDR only records data when a non-trivial collision situation occurs. The EDR does not record any data during normal driving conditions. Similarly, the system never registers who is driving the vehicle or the geographic location of the accident or near-miss situation. However, other parties, such as the police, could use the recorded data in combination with the type of personally identifiable information routinely collected after a traffic accident. Special equipment and access to either the vehicle or the EDR is required to be able to interpret the registered data.

In addition to the EDR, the car is equipped with a number of computers designed to continually check and monitor the function of the car. They can record data during normal driving conditions, but in particular, register faults affecting the vehicle's operation and functionality, or upon activation of the vehicle's active driver support function.

Some of the recorded data is required to enable service and maintenance technicians to diagnose and remedy any faults that occurred in the vehicle. The registered information is also needed to enable Polestar to satisfy legal requirements laid out in laws and by government authorities. Information registered in the vehicle is stored in its computer until the vehicle is serviced or repaired.

In addition to the above, the registered information can be used in aggregate form for research and product development with the aim of continuously improving the safety and quality of Polestar cars.

Polestar will not contribute to the above-described information being disclosed to third parties without the vehicle owner's consent. To comply with national legislation and regulations, Polestar may be forced to disclose information of this nature to the police or other authorities who may assert a legal right to access such. Special technical equipment which Polestar and workshops that have entered into agreements with Polestar have access to is required to be able to read and interpret the recorded data. Polestar is responsible for ensuring that the information, which is transferred to Polestar during servicing and maintenance, is securely stored and managed and that its management complies with relevant legal requirements. For further information – contact Polestar Customer Support.

Event Data Recorder (EDR)

This vehicle is equipped with an Accident Recorder (Event Data Recorder). The Accident Recorder is the device that saves the vehicle's driving information (e.g. driving speed, information on whether the brake pedal and accelerator pedal worked) before/after the accident. It also makes it possible for the saved information to be checked. Its primary purpose is to register and record data related to traffic accidents or collision-like situations, such as times when the

airbag deploys or the vehicle strikes an obstacle in the road. The data is recorded in order to increase understanding of how vehicle systems work in these types of situations. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short time, usually 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record data related to the following in the event of traffic accidents or collision-like situations:

- how the various systems in the car worked
- whether the driver and passenger seatbelts were fastened/tensioned
- the driver's use of the accelerator or brake pedal
- the travel speed of the vehicle.

This information can help us understand the circumstances in which traffic accidents, injuries and damage occur. The EDR only records data when a non-trivial collision situation occurs. The EDR does not record any data during normal driving conditions. Similarly, the system never registers who is driving the vehicle or the geographic location of the accident or near-miss situation. However, other parties, such as the police, could use the recorded data in combination with the type of personally identifiable information routinely collected after a traffic accident. Special equipment and access to either the vehicle or the EDR is required to be able to interpret the registered data.

In addition to the EDR, the car is equipped with a number of computers designed to continually check and monitor the function of the car. They can record data during normal driving conditions, but in particular register faults affecting the vehicle's operation and functionality, or upon activation of the vehicle's driver support function (e.g. City Safety and the auto brake function).

Some of the recorded data is required to enable service and maintenance technicians to diagnose and remedy any faults that occurred in the vehicle. The registered information is also needed to enable Polestar to satisfy legal requirements laid out in laws and by government authorities. Information registered in the vehicle is stored in its computer until the vehicle is serviced or repaired.

In addition to the above, the registered information can be used in aggregate form for research and product development with the aim of continuously improving the safety and quality of Polestar cars.

Polestar will not contribute to the above-described information being disclosed to third parties without the vehicle owner's consent. To comply with national legislation and regulations, Polestar may be forced to disclose information of this nature to the police or other authorities who may assert a legal right to access such. Special technical equipment which Polestar and workshops that have entered into agreements with Polestar have access to is required to be able to read and interpret the recorded data. Polestar is responsible for ensuring that the information, which is transferred to Polestar during servicing and maintenance, is securely stored and managed and that its management complies with relevant legal requirements. For further information – contact Polestar Customer Support.

Event Data Recorder (EDR)

This vehicle is equipped with an "Event Data Recorder" (EDR). Its primary purpose is to register and record data (in accordance with GB39732-2020, Table 2) related to traffic accidents or collision-like situations, such as times when the airbag deploys or the vehicle strikes an obstacle in the road. The data is recorded in order to increase understanding of how vehicle systems work in these types of situations. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short time, usually 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record data related to the following in the event of traffic accidents or collision-like situations:

- How the various systems in the car worked

- Whether the driver's seatbelt was tensioned/ fastened
- The driver's use of the accelerator pedal
- The travel speed of the vehicle

This information can help us understand the circumstances in which traffic accidents, injuries and damage occur. The EDR only records data when a non-trivial collision situation occurs. The EDR does not record any data during normal driving conditions. Similarly, the system never registers who is driving the vehicle or the geographic location of the accident or near-miss situation. However, other parties, such as the police, could use the recorded data in combination with the type of personally identifiable information routinely collected after a traffic accident. Special equipment and access to either the vehicle or the EDR is required to be able to interpret the registered data.

The signal that indicates the speed at which the vehicle was driven comes from "Vehicle Dynamics Domain Master" (VDDM) and is based on information from wheel speed sensors. Every recording of EDR data is given a priority based on an order of priority where airbag activation is top priority. Data from events where non-reversible protection systems are activated is locked. Locked EDR data will not be overwritten by later events. Unlocked EDR data may be overwritten by later events with higher priority.

The read-out tool for EDR data can be purchased from Bosch, see contact information below. The tool consists of hardware and software, and the user needs a Windows-based PC. The tool is connected to the SRS module.

Contact information

Bosch Diagnostics, China

jack.sun2@cn.bosch.com

+86 21 2218 2741

www.bosch-diagnostics.com.cn

https://cdr.boschdiagnostics.com/cdr/cdr-distributors

Applicable to the American market only:

EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an "Event Data Recorder" (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

ASDR

This vehicle is equipped with an Active Safety Data Recorder (ASDR). This data recorder can record information related to the usage of the car, functional errors and active safety actuations (e.g. auto brake). The information saved is used by technicians for service and maintenance to diagnose and repair possible faults that has occurred in the vehicle and to fulfil certain legal requirements. The registered data can also, in congregated form, be used for research and product development purposes to continuously improve the safety and quality of Polestar. For more information contact your local Polestar retailer.

Applicable to the Canadian market only:

EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an "Event Data Recorder" (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

In addition to the EDR, the car is equipped with a number of computers designed to continually check and monitor the function of the car. They can record data during normal driving conditions, but in particular, register faults affecting the vehicle's operation and functionality, or upon activation of the vehicle's active driver support function.

Some of the recorded data is required to enable service and maintenance technicians to diagnose and remedy any faults that occurred in the vehicle. The registered information is also needed to enable Polestar to satisfy legal requirements laid out in laws and by government authorities. Information registered in the vehicle is stored in its computer until the vehicle is serviced or repaired.

In addition to the above, the registered information can be used in aggregate form for research and product development with the aim of continuously improving the safety and quality of Polestar cars.

Polestar will not contribute to the above-described information being disclosed to third parties without the vehicle owner's consent. To comply with national legislation and regulations, Polestar may be forced to disclose information of this nature to the police or other authorities who may assert a legal right to access such. Special technical equipment which Polestar and workshops that have entered into agreements with Polestar have access to is required to be able to read and interpret the recorded data. Polestar is responsible for ensuring that the information, which is transferred to Polestar during servicing and maintenance, is securely stored and man-

aged and that its management complies with relevant legal requirements. For further information – contact Polestar Customer Support.

Related information

- Contact Polestar (p. 16)
- Declaration on Polestar's design components (p. 31)

NOTE

이 자동차에는 사고기록장치가 장착되어 있습니다.

사고기록장치는 자동차의 충돌 등 사고 전후 일정시간 동안 자동차의 운행 정보(주행속도, 제동페달, 가속페달 등의 작동 여부)를 저장하고, 저장된 정보를 확 인할 수 있는 기능을 하는 장치를 말합니다.

사고기록정보는 사고 상황을 좀 더 잘 이해하는데 도움이 됩니다.

Approval of terms and conditions and data collection

Messages about different terms and conditions and data collection can be shown in the centre display. Collection of data takes place to provide better car, safety and app functions, for example.

The first time you use your car, a guide opens in the centre display to assist you to make various settings. In connection with the guide, you are also prompted to give your agreement to different types of terms and conditions and the collection of information.

Prompts to give consent can also be shown in the event of, for example:

- First-time use of apps and services
- New user profiles
- Logging out from and deleting user profiles
- Change of ownership
- Resetting the settings

To access privacy settings:

1. Tap on in the centre display.
2. Press Privacy and data sharing.
3. Then select Polestar privacy settings or Privacy settings for Google.

Some settings, such as Digital Key, can only be made from a profile with administrative privileges.

Related information

- User profiles (p. 163)
- Resetting user data (p. 163)
- Profile settings (p. 165)

Important information on accessories and auxiliary equipment

The incorrect connection and installation of accessories and extra equipment can negatively affect the car's electronic system.

Polestar strongly recommends that Polestar owners should only install genuine accessories approved by Polestar, and that installation of accessories is only carried out by trained and qualified service technicians. Certain accessories only function when associated software is installed in the car's computer system. Contact Polestar Customer Support for more information.

The equipment described in the Manual is not available in all cars - they have different equipment depending on adaptations for the needs of different markets and national or local laws and regulations.

Options or accessories described in this Manual are marked with an asterisk. In the event of uncertainty over what is standard or an option/accessory, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Related information

- Installation of accessories (p. 28)
- Connection of equipment to the car's diagnostic socket (p. 29)
- Reading the Manual (p. 12)

WARNING

- CALIFORNIA proposition 65

  Engine exhaust gases, some of their component parts and certain vehicle components, contain or emit chemicals that are considered by the state of California to cause cancer, embryo injury or other reproductive injury. In addition, certain fluids and certain products present in vehicles contain or emit chemicals from component wear which are considered by the state of California to cause cancer, embryo injury or other reproductive injury.

  See www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

- Some components in the car, such as airbag modules, seatbelt tensioners, adaptable steering columns and button cell batteries may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may be required during service or scrapping when the car has reached end-of-life.

  See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

Installation of accessories

WARNING

- The driver always bears the ultimate responsibility that the car is used safely and that laws and regulations in force are followed.

  It is also important that the car has maintenance and service according to Polestar's recommendations, the manual information and the Status and Warranty book.

  It is also important that the car has maintenance and service according to Polestar's recommendations, the manual information and the Service and Warranty Booklet.

Contact Polestar Customer Support for more information on installation of accessories.

- Always seek the advice of a trained and qualified Polestar service technician before installing any accessories in or on your car.
- Accessories that are not approved by Polestar may not have been specifically tested for use with your car.
- Some of the car's performance or safety systems can be negatively affected if you install accessories that have not been tested by Polestar, or if you permit someone without experience of the car to install accessories.
- Damage that is caused by accessories installed in a non-approved or incorrect way is not covered by any new car warranty. More warranty information can be found in the Status and Warranty booklet. Polestar does not accept any liability for deaths, personal injury or costs arising as a result of the installation of accessories.
- Damage that is caused by accessories installed in a non-approved or incorrect way is not covered by any new car warranty. More warranty information can be found in the Service and Warranty booklet. Polestar does not accept any liability for deaths, personal injury or costs arising as a result of the installation of accessories.

Related information

- Important information on accessories and auxiliary equipment (p. 27)

Connection of equipment to the car's diagnostic socket

Incorrect connection and installation of software or diagnostic tools may have a negative effect on the car's electronic system.

Polestar strongly recommends that Polestar owners should only install genuine accessories approved by Polestar. Contact Polestar Customer Support for more information on installation of accessories. Certain accessories only function when associated software is installed in the car's computer system.

Data link connector (On-board Diagnostic, OBDII) is under the instrument panel on the driver's side.

Type approval

USA

FCC ID: 2AGKKACUII-06

This device complies with FCC rules part 15. Usage is subject to the following conditions:

(1) This unit must not cause dangerous Interference and

(2) this unit must be able to withstand any received Interference, including interference that can cause unwanted functions.

Canada

IC: 20839-ACUII06

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standards. Usage is subject to the following conditions:

(1) This unit must not cause Interference and

(2) this unit must be able to withstand any received Interference, including interference that can cause unwanted functions.

Related information

- Important information on accessories and auxiliary equipment (p. 27)

WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

NOTE

Polestar accepts no liability for the consequences if unauthorised equipment is connected to the On-board Diagnostic socket (OBDII). Contact Polestar Customer Support for more information.

Certification of technicians

In addition to the training at Polestar's factories, Polestar encourages certification by the National Institute for Automotive Service Excellence (A.S.E.).

Certified technicians have met high competence requirements within specific areas. In addition to having passed the exam, every technician must also have worked in the field for at least two years before a certificate is issued. These professional technicians have the best capacity to analyse vehicle problems and carry out the maintenance that is necessary to keep your Polestar in the best possible condition.

Electric vehicles

Technicians who carry out work on vehicles with electric drive should also have the necessary training and special certification required to carry out repairs and/or maintenance on electrically powered vehicles.

WARNING

A number of electrical components in electric cars use current with high voltage and can be extremely dangerous if they are handled incorrectly. Contact Polestar Customer Support for more information on how these components and all orange cables in the car are to be handled.

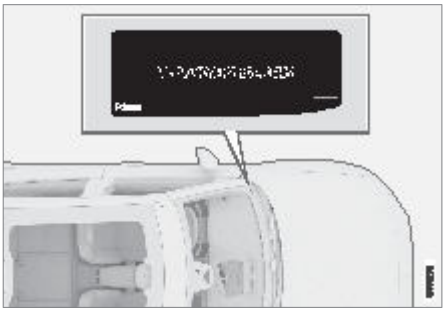
Showing the car's identification number

If you get in touch with Polestar Customer Support with regard to Polestar Connect, for example, you will need the car's identification number (VIN[1]).

1. Open the centre display app view.
2. Tap on settings at the bottom of the display.
3. Continue to System, About and then VIN number.
   > The car's identification number is shown.

Another way of finding VIN is:

- at the beginning of Status and Warranty
- at the beginning of Service and Warranty
- in the car's registration document
- contact the Swedish Transport Agency and give the car's registration number
- on the dashboard through the car's windscreen.



Read the car's identification number, VIN

It is possible to read the VIN by connecting a tool to the car's On-Board Diagnostic socket (OBD[2]). Polestar uses CAN HS (500k) for reading VIN. Use a tool that meets the following standards to read VIN via OBD:

1 Vehicle Identification Number
2 On-Board Diagnostic socket

- SAE J2534 (pass thru) for communication with the vehicle.
- SAE J1962/SAE 2012 regarding OBD connector pin configuration for CAN HS.
- UDS ISO 14229-x regarding the readout of standardized data identifier (DID) for VIN.

Related information

- Polestar Connect (p. 540)

Declaration on Polestar's design components

Polestar produces and manufactures cars that are designed to protect the passengers in the event of an accident.

Polestar cars are designed to absorb the forces of a collision. The energy absorbing system, that consists of but is not restricted to structural components such as bumper reinforcements, bumpers; energy absorbers, frames, rails, mudguard protection guards, A-pillars, B-pillars and body panels must interact to keep the passenger compartment intact and protect the occupants.

The collision safety system that consists of but is not restricted to airbags, inflatable curtains and deployment sensors, interacts with the above components so that the airbags deploy at the right time.

Because of the above, Polestar does not permit the use of aftermarket, alternative or anything other than Polestar genuine parts for repair after collisions.

Polestar also recommends using only Polestar-approved replacement glass, chemicals/adhesives, and approved tools and equipment. The use of aftermarket glass, chemicals/adhesives, and alternate tools and equipment, particularly with a windscreen replacement, can have an adverse effect on collision avoidance and advanced lighting systems; additionally, this could potentially cause risk of serious injury in a crash affecting the rigidity of the windscreen/release in a rollover, etc.

Moreover, Polestar does not permit use or reuse of structural components from an existing vehicle that has been damaged previously. Even if these parts may appear the same, it is difficult to determine whether the parts have been previously replaced with parts other than genuine parts or if the parts have been damaged in a previous collision. The quality of these used parts may have been affected by exposure to the elements.

Customer Care and Assistance

Related information

- Recording data (p. 22)

Your satisfaction with Polestar products and services is of prime importance. Should you have any questions concerning service or your Polestar's performance, Polestar Customer Support will be happy to answer them for you.

Polestar recommends that you keep records of all maintenance and repair to your car:

- Invoice
- Maintenance records
- Repair orders.

If, however, a situation arises that you believe has not been addressed to your satisfaction, take following steps:

Contact Polestar Customer Support. You may contact us via phone, mail or e-mail. Then Customer Care Centre will need the following information from you:

- Your name, address, and telephone number
- Vehicle Identification Number (found on your Vehicle Registration Card, Vehicle Certificate of Ownership, and located on the upper left corner of the dashboard).
- Date of purchase and current mileage
- Name of delivery centre (sales and/or workshop facility)
- Description of the problem.

In mainland China

Please contact

Polestar Customer Support

Hotline: 400-617-1017

polestar.com/zh-cn/contact/

polestar.com/zh-cn/

Related information

- Contact Polestar (p. 16)

Change of market when importing or relocating

If you import a car or move to a different country with your car, you should contact Polestar Customer Support to get help with registering your car in the new country. If you do not do this then you may experience that apps, the Polestar app, software downloads and other online services are affected and do not work correctly.

If you import a car or move to a different country with your car, you should contact Polestar Customer Support to get help with registering your car in the new country. If you do not do this then you may experience that apps, the 极星 app, software downloads and other online services are affected and do not work correctly.

Creating a new Polestar ID in your new home market

When you relocate to another country you should create a Polestar ID in the new country. If you have already created a Polestar ID in another country and want to use the same email address, you first need to delete your Polestar ID in the region you originally created it. Alternatively, you can create a new Polestar ID using another e-mail address.

Download the Polestar app

Download the Polestar app from the country in which the car will be used, then link the app to your car.

Download the 极星 app

Download the 极星 app from the country in which the car will be used, then link the app to your car.

Related information

- Polestar ID (p. 16)
- Creating a Polestar ID (p. 17)
- Polestar Connect (p. 540)

NOTE

Contact Polestar Customer Support if you have imported or relocated with your car to a new country.

Available services may vary depending on market.

Driver distraction

The driver is responsible for doing everything possible to ensure the safety of themselves, their passengers and other road users. Part of this responsibility is avoiding distractions such as carrying out an activity that is not related to operating the car in a driving environment.

Your new Polestar is, or can be, equipped with content-rich entertainment and communications systems. This could be mobile phones with handsfree, navigation systems and audio systems with lots of functions. You may also have other portable electronic devices for your own convenience. Used correctly, in a safe way they can enrich the driving experience. If they are used in the wrong way they could distract you.

We wish to give the following warnings regarding such systems, to indicate Polestar's concern for your safety. Never use a device or function in the car in such a way that it will distract you from the task of driving safely. Distractions can lead to serious accidents. Apart from these general warnings, we offer the following advice regarding the new functions that may be in the car:

WARNING

- Never use a hand-held mobile phone while driving. In some areas it is forbidden for the driver to use a mobile phone while the car is moving.
- If the car is equipped with a navigation system you must only set and change the itinerary when the car is parked.
- Never program the audio system while the car is moving. Program the radio's presets when the car is parked and then use the programmed presets for faster and simpler use of the radio.
- Never use laptops or hand-held computers while the car is moving.

Related information

- Audio and media (p. 510)
- T map AUTO (p. 564)
- Amap Auto (p. 565)
- Google Maps (p. 566)

Radio Frequency Identification - RFID

An RFID[3] tag is fitted in the car on the inside of the windscreen that stores data about the car. The data is imported by an RFID reader in traffic.

The RFID tag is located in the car on the inside of the windscreen, approx. 10 mm beneath the dark edging of the windscreen along its top edge, and approx. 10 mm to the right of the dark edging out towards the cover in the centre of the windscreen. The RFID tag must not be removed.

Due to a legal requirement in China, space must be left for an RFID tag on every vehicle.

Polestar is not responsible for the information saved in the RFID tag or how it is used.

Getting started with Google services

Link your Google account to your user profile in order to get started with Google services.

Logging in with a Google account means that the Google services such as Google Assistant and Google Maps will be more personalised. In order to open Google Play, a Google account must be linked to the user profile in question.

Creating a Google account

Go to accounts.google.com/signup. Enter your name, create an email address, or use an existing one, and create a password. Enter your phone number and verify the account using the code sent to the phone.

Logging in using the Google account in the centre display

1. Select Sign in in the centre display.
2. Enter the email address linked to your Google account. Then tap on Next.
3. Enter the password linked to your Google account. Then tap on Next.

If login problems arise, make sure that the car is connected to the Internet.

Related information

- Link account to user profile (p. 167)
- Approval of terms and conditions and data collection (p. 26)
- Voice control with NUGU auto Assistant (p. 170)
- Voice control (p. 171)
- Voice control with Google Assistant (p. 172)
- T map AUTO (p. 564)
- Amap Auto (p. 565)
- Google Maps (p. 566)
- Apps (p. 511)
- Cache for map data (p. 587)

Important - Before you use the car for the first time

- Downloading maps (p. 587)

Important information to read before you use the car for the first time.

In addition to the standard equipment, this manual also describes accessories and functions that are not standard, as well as those intended for cars in markets other than the Japanese market. Certain accessories cannot or must not be installed in your car, even if they are described in this manual.

This Japanese edition has been created based on the Swedish original, there may therefore be certain differences between the description in the manual and the actual car.

See the accompanying instruction booklets or installation guides for retrofitted extra equipment and accessories when you are installing or using them.

Contact Polestar Customer Support if you require further information.

The descriptions in this manual are based on general usage conditions. Remember that they can change depending on location, environment and methods used while driving.

Information, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the latest product information. We reserve the right to make modifications without prior notice.

The illustrations in this manual are for your information only and may differ from the actual cars.

This manual contains important safety instructions. We recommend that you read them before you use the car for the first time.

The manual must be a part of the car.

Hand over this printed manual and the service and warranty booklets to the new owner if you sell the car.

The law requires that maintenance and daily checks are carried out.

Maintenance must be carried out in accordance with the instructions in order for your Polestar to be kept as safe and reliable as possible.

In addition, daily checks must be performed by the owner.

You must check and follow the driving and maintenance instructions in this manual in order for the Polestar warranty to apply.

Polestar accepts no responsibility for damage or accidents if the instructions described in this manual are not followed.

(No photographs, illustrations or texts in this manual may be copied without permission from Polestar.)

Installing accessories

Accessories must be fitted according to the enclosed installation methods and notes.

Contact Polestar Customer Support if you require further information.

Installation of radio equipment

Communication equipment, e.g. radio with fixed aerial, may have a negative effect on the car's electronic equipment (management system, ABS, airbags etc.).

It can also cause the car to perform incorrectly and in worst cases cause fire or other accidents.

Contact Polestar Customer Support if you require further information.

Related information

- Available information (p. 10)

WARNING

- This manual only apples to cars imported and sold via the correct channels by Polestar Japan.

WARNING

- Installation of accessories not approved by Polestar or incorrect installation of accessories can result in poor driving characteristics or fire.

Section 03
—
Safety

Safety

The vehicle is equipped with several safety systems that work together to protect the vehicle's driver and passengers in the event of an accident.

The car is equipped with a number of sensors that react in the event of an accident and activate different safety systems, such as different types of airbags and seatbelt tensioners. Depending on the specific accident situation, such as collisions at different angles, roll-over or driving off the road, the systems react in different ways to provide good protection.

There are also mechanical safety systems such as Whiplash Protection System. The car is also constructed so that a large part of the force of a collision is distributed to beams, pillars, floor, roof and other parts of the body.

The car's safety mode may be activated after a collision if an important function in the car has been damaged.

Warning symbol in driver display

The warning symbol is illuminated in the driver display when the car is started. The symbol is extinguished after approximately 6 seconds if the car's safety system is fault-free.

If the specific warning symbol is broken then the general warning symbol is illuminated instead and the driver display shows the same message.

Related information

- Safety during pregnancy (p. 41)
- Safety for occupants (p. 41)
- Message to customer about manufacturing defect (p. 42)
- Reporting safety defects (p. 43)
- Recall information (p. 44)
- Seatbelts (p. 46)
- Airbags (p. 53)
- Whiplash Protection System (p. 44)
- Pedestrian Protection System (p. 45)
- Safety mode (p. 72)
- Child safety (p. 73)

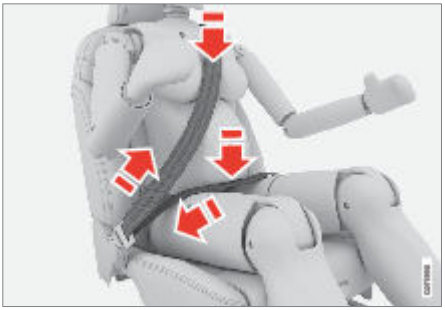
WARNING

- If the warning symbol remains illuminated or is switched on during driving and the message Drive to workshop SRS airbag Service urgent is shown in the driver display, it means that part of one of the safety systems does not have full functionality. Contact Polestar Customer Support.
- Never modify or repair the car's various safety systems yourself. Defective work in one of the systems can cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

Safety during pregnancy

It is important that the seatbelt is used correctly during pregnancy, and that pregnant drivers adjust their seating position.

Seatbelt



The diagonal section should wrap over the shoulder then be routed between the breasts and to the side of the abdomen.

The lap section should lay flat over the thighs and as low as possible under the abdomen. – It must never be allowed to ride upward. Remove the slack from the seatbelt and ensure that it fits as close to the body as possible. In addition, check that there are no twists in the seatbelt.

Seating position

As the pregnancy progresses, pregnant drivers must adjust the seat and steering wheel such that they can easily maintain control of the vehicle as they drive (which means that they must be able to easily operate the foot pedals and steering wheel). The aim should be to position the seat with as large a distance as possible between abdomen and steering wheel.

Related information

- Safety (p. 40)
- Seatbelts (p. 46)
- Power front seat (p. 213)

Safety for occupants

All Polestar cars are designed to offer an outstanding driving experience. Part of this experience is safety, and this is planned with the same eye for detail as all other aspects of the car.

We have developed a number of safety functions and have transferred many of the effective safety functions from Volvo so that the surroundings are as safe as possible for everyone in a Polestar.

Please do not hesitate to contact Polestar Customer Support if you have any queries relating to safety.

Safety reminders for the occupants

How safe you drive does not depend on how old you are but more on:

- How good you can see.
- Your ability to concentrate.
- How fast you can make decisions under pressure to avoid an accident.

The following suggestions are intended to help you manage a constantly changing traffic environment.

- Never drink and drive.
- If you are taking any medication, ask your doctor if there are any potential effects that impact on your driving ability.
- Take an advanced driving course.
- Check your sight regularly.
- Keep windscreen and headlamps clean.
- Change wiper blades when they start leaving streaks.
- Allow for traffic, road and weather conditions, especially for braking distance.
- Never text while driving.
- Avoid using a mobile phone when you are driving.

Message to customer about manufacturing defect

Related information

- Safety (p. 40)
- Message to customer about manufacturing defect (p. 42)
- Reporting safety defects (p. 43)
- Recall information (p. 44)

제작사: 폴스타오토모티브코리아(유)

연락처 : 080-360-0100

제작결함안내(제50조 관련)

귀하의 자동차 또는 자동차부품에 잦은 고장 등의 문제로 교통사고를 유발할 수 있는 결함이 있다고 판단되면, 자기 및 다른 사람의 안전을 위하여 즉시 폴스타오토모티브코리아(유)와 제작결함조사를 시행하는 교통안전공단 자동차안전연구원에 연락하여 주시기 바랍니다.

교통안전공단 자동차안전연구원은 소비자 불만사항 등을 접수하여 분석한 후 해당 자동차 또는 자동차부품에 제작 결함의 가능성이 있다고 판단되는 경우 제작결함조사를 실시하여 해당 제작사에게 제작결함시정(recall) 등의 조치를 취할 것입니다.

교통안전공단 자동차안전연구원의 자동차 또는 자동차부품 결함 등 소비자 불만접수창구는 다음과 같습니다.

교통안전공단 자동차안전연구원

전화: 080-357-2500

인터넷 홈페이지: 제작결함정보전산망 (www.car.go.kr)

Reporting safety defects

The following information will assist you in reporting any safety related defects perceived in the car.

Reporting safety defects in the USA

If you think your car has a defect that may cause an accident, or that may cause injuries or death, you must immediately notify the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) as well as notifying Polestar Automotive USA Inc. An investigation may be launched if the NHTSA receives similar complaints, and they can order a campaign for recalls and action if it emerges that a group of cars are subject to a safety defect. However, the NHTSA cannot get involved in individual problems between yourself, your dealer or Polestar Automotive USA Inc. You can contact the NHTSA by phoning the free car safety number:

1-888-327-4236

(TTY: 1-800-424-9153) or write to: NHTSA Headquarters, 1200 New Jersey Avenue SE., West Building, Washington D.C. 20590.

You can also obtain other information concerning motor vehicle safety from http://www.safecar.gov/, where you can specify the car's VIN (Vehicle Identification Number) to see whether there are any open vehicle recalls.

Polestar strongly recommends that if the car is part of a service campaign, a safety or emission-related recall or some other similar action, it should be carried out as soon as possible. Check with the retailer or Polestar Automotive USA Inc. to see if the car is subject to any such measures.

NHTSA can be reached via:

Internet:

http://www.nhtsa.gov

Telephone:

1-888-327-4236

Reporting safety defects in Canada

If you think your car has a defect that may cause an accident, or that may cause injuries or death, you must immediately notify Transport Canada as well as notifying Polestar Automotive Canada Inc.

You can contact Transport Canada on:

1-866-995-9737

Teletypewriter (TTY): 1-888-675-6863

Fax: 613-954-4731

Postal address: Transport Canada - 330 Sparks St, Ottawa, (Ontario) K1A 0N5

www.tc.gc.ca

Related information

- Safety (p. 40)
- Safety for occupants (p. 41)
- Recall information (p. 44)
- Showing the car's identification number (p. 30)

Recall information

To find out if the car has any open recalls, enter the Vehicle Identity Number (VIN) on Polestar's website, www.polestar.com/us/recall-information/, or contact Polestar Customer Support and state the car's Vehicle Identity Number (VIN), which can be found at the bottom of the windscreen.

In the USA, you can also specify the vehicle identification number in the search box on the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) website on www.nhtsa.gov.

In Canada, you can also search the recalls database on the Transport Canada website at: www.tc.gc.ca.

Related information

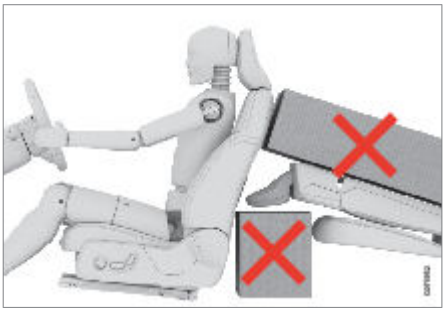
- Safety (p. 40)
- Message to customer about manufacturing defect (p. 42)
- Reporting safety defects (p. 43)
- Safety for occupants (p. 41)

Whiplash Protection System

Whiplash Protection System (WHIPS) reduces the risk of whiplash injuries. The system consists of energy absorbing backrests and seat cushion, as well as a specially designed head restraint in the front seats.

WHIPS is deployed in the event of a rear-end collision, where the angle and speed of the collision and the nature of the colliding vehicle all have an influence.

When WHIPS is deployed, the front seat backrests are lowered backward and the seat cushions move downward to change the seating position of the driver and front seat passenger. Its movement helps to absorb some of the forces that can arise and cause whiplash.



Do not leave any objects on the floor behind or under the front seats or in the rear seat that may prevent WHIPS from functioning.

Seating position

For good protection from WHIPS the driver and passenger must have the correct seating position and make sure that the system's function is not obstructed.

Set the correct seating position in the front seat before driving starts.

Driver and front seat passenger should sit in the centre of the seat with as little space as possible between the head and the head restraint.

WHIPS and child seats

The protection provided by the car to children seated in a child seat or on a booster cushion is not diminished by WHIPS.

Related information

- Safety (p. 40)
- Power front seat (p. 213)
- Rear Collision Warning* (p. 373)

WARNING

- WHIPS is a supplement to the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.
- Never modify or repair the seat or WHIPS yourself. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

  If the front seats have been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the seats must be replaced. Some of the seats' protective properties may have been lost even if they do not appear damaged.
- Do not squeeze rigid objects between the rear seat cushion and the front seat's backrest.

  If a backrest in the rear seat is lowered then any load must be secured to prevent it from sliding up to the front seat backrest in the event of a collision.
- If a rear-facing child seat is being used in the rear seat, the corresponding front seat must be moved forwards so that it is not in contact with the child seat.

Pedestrian Protection System

The Pedestrian Protection System (PPS) is a system which, in certain frontal collisions, contributes to mitigating a pedestrian's impact with the car.

In certain frontal collisions with a pedestrian, the sensors in the front of the car react and the system is activated.

When PPS is activated, the following occur:

- The bonnet is raised and pushed slightly back.
- An automatic alarm is sent via Polestar Connect.
- An automatic alarm is sent via ЭРА-ГЛОНАСС.

The sensors are active at a speed of approx. 25-50 km/h (15-30 mph).

The sensors are designed to detect a collision with an object that has similar properties to those of the human leg.

Symbols in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	PPS has been activated, or a fault has occurred in the system. Follow the recommendation given.

Related information

- Safety (p. 40)
- Automatic collision alarm with Polestar Connect (p. 542)

Seatbelts

WARNING

- Do not fit any accessories or change anything in the front. Incorrect intervention at the front may cause incorrect function in the system and lead to serious injury and damage to the car.

  Polestar recommends that genuine wiper arms are used and that only genuine parts are used for them.

- Never modify or repair the system yourself. Contact Polestar Customer Support. Defective work in the system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

- Contact Polestar Customer Support in the event of any damage to the front of the car so as to ensure that the system is intact.

NOTE

There may be objects in the traffic environment that prompt a signal to the sensors that is similar to a collision with a pedestrian. It is possible that the system will be activated in the event of a collision with such an object.

Heavy braking can have serious consequences if the seatbelts are not used.

Seatbelts should always be worn by all occupants of the car. Children must be secured in a child seat for small children, adjustable child seat or on a booster cushion, depending on age, weight and height.

It is important that the seatbelt lies against the body so it can provide good protection. Do not lean the backrest too far back. The seatbelt is designed to protect in a normal seating position.

Most states and regions require all occupants of a car to use a seatbelt.

Seatbelt maintenance

Check regularly that the seatbelts are in good condition. Use water and a mild detergent for cleaning. Make sure the seatbelt system is in working order by securing the seatbelt and pulling rapidly on the belt.

Specific information for Australia

To comply with Australian requirements the following additional information should be read in conjunction with the above information.

Related information

- Safety (p. 40)
- Seatbelt tensioner (p. 50)
- Putting on and taking off seatbelts (p. 48)
- Door and seatbelt reminder (p. 52)

WARNING

- Remember not to clip or hook the seatbelt to hooks or other interior fittings, as this prevents the belt from tightening properly.

WARNING

- The seatbelts and airbags interact. If a seatbelt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.
- Never modify or repair the seatbelts yourself. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

  If the seatbelt has been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the entire seatbelt must be replaced. Some of the seatbelt's protective properties may have been lost even if the seatbelt does not appear damaged. The seatbelt must also be replaced if it shows signs of wear or damage. The new seatbelt must be type-approved and designed for installation at the same location as the replaced seatbelt.
- - Never carry out any repairs to the belt yourself; contact Polestar Customer Support.
  - All devices used to loosen the shoulder strap of the three-point seatbelt against the body will have a negative effect when protecting you in the event of a collision.
  - The seat's backrest must not be tilted too far backwards. The shoulder strap of the seatbelt must be a close fit to work correctly.
  - Do not use child seats or booster cushions/child seat backrests in the front passenger seat. We recommend that children who have grown out of such products should sit in the rear seat with the seatbelt correctly tensioned.

WARNING

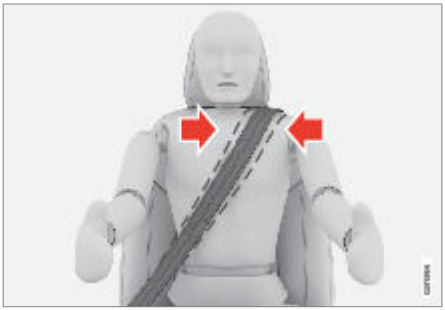
- - Seatbelts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.
  - Seatbelts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.
  - Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged..
  - It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.
  - Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.
  - Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.
  - No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seatbelt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seatbelt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

Putting on and taking off seatbelts

Make sure that all passengers have fastened their seatbelts before starting to drive.

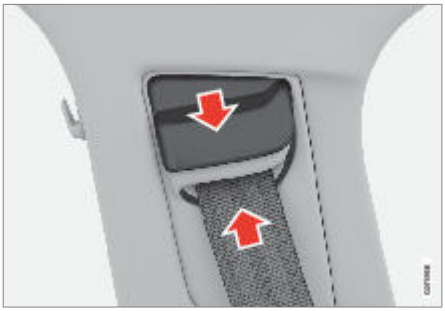
Putting on seatbelts

1. Pull out the seatbelt slowly and make sure it is not twisted or damaged.
2. Lock the belt by inserting the locking tab in the intended buckle.
   > A loud "click" indicates that the belt has locked.
3. Position the belt as high as possible without it chafing against your throat.



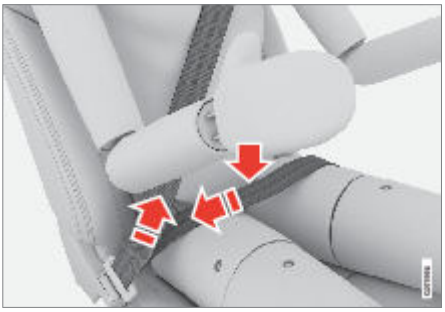
The seatbelt must pass over the shoulder (not down over the arm).

In the front seats, the height of the belt can be adjusted.



Push the seatbelt bracket together and move the belt up or down.

4. Tension the hip strap over the lap by pulling the diagonal shoulder belt up towards the shoulder.



The hip strap must be positioned low down (not over the abdomen).

Taking off seatbelts

1. Press the red button on the seatbelt buckle and then let the belt retract.
2. If the seatbelt does not retract fully, feed it in by hand so that it does not hang loose.

Related information

- Seatbelts (p. 46)
- Seatbelt tensioner (p. 50)
- Door and seatbelt reminder (p. 52)
- Rear seat (p. 219)

WARNING

- Always insert the tongue of the seatbelt into the buckle on the correct side. The seatbelts and buckles would otherwise possibly not function as intended in the event of a collision. There is a risk of serous injury.
- Each seatbelt is designed for only one person.
- Never use a seatbelt for more than one occupant. Never wear the shoulder strap of the seatbelt under the arm, behind the back or in some other incorrect position. This could cause injury in the event of an accident. Since the seatbelts lose a lot of their strength when exposed to extensive stretching they should be replaced after every collision, even if they appear undamaged.
- Remember not to clip or hook the seatbelt to hooks or other interior fittings, as this prevents the belt from tightening properly.
- Do not make any damages on seatbelts nor insert any foreign objects into a buckle. The seatbelts and buckles would then possibly not function as intended in the event of a collision. There is a risk of serous injury.

Seatbelt tensioner

NOTE

The seatbelt is equipped with an inertia reel that is locked in the following situations:

- if the belt is extended too quickly.
- during braking and acceleration.
- if the car leans heavily.
- when driving in bends.
- if the automatic locking/emergency locking (ALR/ELR) function is activated. Each seatbelt (except the driver's) is equipped with an ALR function designed to keep the seatbelt tensioned when fastening a child seat. ALR is activated when the seatbelt is pulled out all the way. If this is done, a noise will be emitted from the belt reel. This is normal. The seatbelt can then only be retracted. The function is deactivated automatically when the seatbelt is unbuckled and fully retracted.

The car is fitted with standard seatbelt tensioners and electric* seatbelt tensioners that can tension the seatbelts in critical situations and collisions.

Standard seatbelt tensioner

The seatbelts in the front seat and at the outer seats in the rear are equipped with a standard belt pretensioner.

The seatbelt tensioner tensions the seatbelt in the event of a collision with sufficient force in order to more effectively restrain the occupant.

Electric seatbelt tensioner*

The driver and front passenger seatbelts are equipped with an electric seatbelt tensioner.

The seatbelt pretensioner works together and can be activated together with the driver support systems for assistance at risk of collision and Rear Collision Warning*. In critical situations, such as panic braking, driving off the road (e.g. the car rolls into a ditch, lifts off the ground or hits something in the terrain), skidding, or risk of collision, the seatbelt can be tensioned by the seatbelt tensioner's electric motor.

The electric seatbelt tensioner helps to adjust the occupant to a better position, reducing the risk of striking the car's interior and improving the effect of safety systems, such as the car's airbags.

When the critical situation has come to an end, the seatbelt and the electric seatbelt pretensioner are restored automatically, but they can also be restored manually.

Related information

- Seatbelts (p. 46)
- Putting on and taking off seatbelts (p. 48)
- Resetting the electric seatbelt tensioner* (p. 51)

- Activating and deactivating passenger airbag* (p. 62)
- Assistance at risk of collision (p. 358)
- Rear Collision Warning* (p. 373)

WARNING

Never modify or repair the seatbelts yourself. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

If the seatbelt has been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the entire seatbelt must be replaced. Some of the seatbelt's protective properties may have been lost even if the seatbelt does not appear damaged. The seatbelt must also be replaced if it shows signs of wear or damage. The new seatbelt must be type-approved and designed for installation at the same location as the replaced seatbelt.

IMPORTANT

If the passenger airbag is deactivated, the electric seatbelt tensioner on the passenger side will also be deactivated.

Resetting the electric seatbelt tensioner*

The electric seatbelt tensioner is designed to be reset automatically, but the seatbelt tensioner can be reset manually if the belt remains extended.

1. Stop the car at a safe place.
2. Unfasten the seatbelt and then refasten it.
   > The seatbelt and electric seatbelt tensioner are reset.

Related information

- Seatbelt tensioner (p. 50)
- Seatbelts (p. 46)

WARNING

Never modify or repair the seatbelts yourself. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

If the seatbelt has been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the entire seatbelt must be replaced. Some of the seatbelt's protective properties may have been lost even if the seatbelt does not appear damaged. The seatbelt must also be replaced if it shows signs of wear or damage. The new seatbelt must be type-approved and designed for installation at the same location as the replaced seatbelt.

Door and seatbelt reminder

The system reminds unbelted occupants to wear a seatbelt, and also warns about an open door, bonnet or tailgate.

Information in the driver display

Graphics in the driver display with different types of warnings. The warning colour on the door and tailgate is dependent on the vehicle's speed.

The graphics in the driver display show the status of the belts, bonnet, tailgate and doors.

The graphic can be acknowledged by pressing the O button on the right-hand steering wheel keypad.

As soon as the graphic has been acknowledged, or after a while if the graphic is not acknowledged, it can switch to a smaller format that appears at the top edge of the driver display.

Seatbelt reminder

Visual reminder in the roof console.

A visual reminder is given in the roof console and by means of the warning symbol in the driver display.

The type of visual reminder (fixed or flashing) and audible reminder (various signals) is dependent on the speed, driving time and distance.

Reminders or information are provided by graphics in different ways depending on the belt position.

For the front seat and rear outer seats:

- a reminder is given when the driver or passenger is not wearing a seatbelt while the car is in motion
- a reminder is given when a seatbelt is removed while the car is in motion
- information is given on which seat belts are in use (or not).

For the rear centre seat:

- a reminder is given when the seatbelt is removed while the car is in motion
- information is given on whether or not the seat belt is in use.

Airbags

Reminders for doors, bonnet and tailgate

If the bonnet, tailgate or a door is not closed properly, the driver display's graphics show what is open. Stop the car in a safe place as soon as possible and close the source of the warning.

If the car is driven at a speed lower than approx. 10 km/h (6 mph) then the driver display's information symbol illuminates.

If the car is driven at a speed higher than approx. 10 km/h (6 mph) then the driver display's warning symbol illuminates.

Related information

- Seatbelts (p. 46)
- Putting on and taking off seatbelts (p. 48)

NOTE

- The seatbelts built into child restraint systems are not included in the seatbelt reminder system.
- If the seatbelt reminder is activated by a child seat on an outer seat in the rear seat that is not attached with the seatbelt, the reminder can be acknowledged, or the seatbelt can be attached.

The car is equipped with airbags and inflatable curtains for driver and passengers.

Deployed airbags

If any of the airbags have deployed, the following is recommended:

- Recovering the car. Contact Polestar Customer Support. Do not drive with deployed airbags.
- Contact Polestar Customer Support for replacement of components in the car's safety system.
- Seek medical attention if necessary.

Related information

- Safety (p. 40)
- Driver and passenger airbags (p. 55)
- Driver airbag (p. 59)
- Passenger airbag (p. 60)
- Outer side airbags (p. 69)
- Inflatable curtains (p. 71)

WARNING

- The airbag system's control module is located in the centre console. If the centre console has been drenched with water or other liquid, disconnect the cables to the 12 V battery. Do not attempt to start the car since the airbags may deploy. Recovering the car. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

WARNING

- • If the warning lamp for the airbags remains illuminated after the car has been started, or if it illuminates while you are driving, contact Polestar Customer Support as soon as possible.
  - Never modify or repair the car's various safety systems yourself. Defective work in one of the systems can cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

- Never try to start the car if it has any type of water damage (e.g. drenched floor carpet/water on the car's inner floor). This may cause the airbags to be deployed, which can lead to serious injury. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

  Before starting the recovery attempt:

  1. Make sure the ignition has been switched off for at least ten minutes and disconnect the battery.
  2. Deactivate the gear selector inhibitor manually.

- Never drive with deployed airbags. They can make steering difficult. Other safety systems may also be damaged. The smoke and dust created when the airbags are deployed can cause skin and eye irritation/injury after intensive exposure. In case of irritation, wash with cold water. The rapid deployment sequence and airbag fabric may cause friction and skin burns.

WARNING

- If any of the airbags has deployed:
  - Do not attempt to drive the car. Contact Polestar Customer Support.
  - Seek medical attention if necessary.

NOTE

The detectors react differently depending on the nature of the collision and whether or not the seatbelts are fastened. Applies to all belt positions.

It is therefore possible that only one (or none) of the airbags may inflate in a collision. The detectors sense the force of the collision on the vehicle and the action is adapted accordingly so that none, one or more airbags are deployed.

Driver and passenger airbags

As a supplement to the seatbelts, the vehicle is equipped with airbags on the driver and passenger sides in the front seat.

Driver and passenger airbags.

In the event of a frontal collision, the airbags help to protect the head, neck, face and chest of the driver and passenger, as well as their knees and legs.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the airbag/airbags is inflated. The airbag cushions the initial collision impact for the occupant. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. When this occurs, smoke escapes into the car. This is completely normal. The entire process, including inflation and deflation of the airbag, occurs within tenths of a second.

Front airbag system

The front airbag system contains gas generators surrounded by the airbags and detectors for speed reduction that activate the gas generators to inflate the airbags with nitrogen.

When the movement of the occupants compresses the airbags, some of the gas is pressed out at a regulated speed in order to provide better damping. The seatbelt tensioners are activated for the belted occupants, which minimises slack in the seatbelt. The entire process, including inflation and deflation of the airbag, occurs within tenths of a second.

The locations of the front airbags are shown with SRS AIRBAG stamped in the steering wheel padding and above the glovebox, and with decals on both sun visors plus on the front and the far right of the instrument panel.

The front driver airbag is folded into the steering wheel hub.

The knee airbag is folded underneath the instrument panel on the driver side. AIRBAG is stamped on the panel.

The front passenger airbag is folded behind a panel located above the glovebox.

Deployment of the front airbags

- The front airbags are designed to deploy after certain frontal collisions or collisions at an angle from the front, impact or rapid speed reductions, depending on force of impact, angle, speed and the colliding object. The airbags can also be deployed in certain other collisions when there is a rapid reduction in speed.
- The airbag system's detectors, which deploy the front airbags, are designed to determine whether the intensity of the collision is sufficient for the seatbelt tensioners and/or the airbags to deploy.

Not all frontal collisions deploy the front airbags, however.

- If the collision is with a soft object, a snow bank or bush for example, or with fixed objects at low speed, the airbags may not be deployed.
- The front airbags are not normally deployed by a side or rear collision, or if the car rolls over.
- The extent of body damage is not a reliable measure of whether the airbags should have deployed or not.

Contact Polestar Customer Support if you have any questions about any component in the crash safety system, or:

In the USA:

Polestar Automotive USA Inc.

Customer Support

777 MacArthur Blvd

Mahwah, New Jersey 07430

1-800-806-2504

www.polestar.com/us

In Canada:

Polestar Automotive Canada Inc.

9130 Leslie Street, Suite 101

Richmond Hill, ON L4B 0B9

1-800-806-2507

www.polestar.com/ca

Airbag decals

Airbag decals on both sun visors.

Airbag decals on passenger side.

Related information

- Airbags (p. 53)
- Occupant Classification System (p. 64)

WARNING

- The seatbelts and airbags interact. If the belt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

  To minimise the risk of injury if the airbag deploys, passengers must sit as upright as possible with their feet on the floor and backs against the backrest.

- Contact Polestar Customer Support for repairs. Defective work in the airbag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

WARNING

- The airbags in the car are designed as a COMPLEMENT to, not as a replacement for, the three-point seatbelts. For maximum protection: always use the seatbelts. Be aware that no system can prevent all possible injuries that may arise in the event of an accident.
- Never drive with your hands on the steering wheel's padding/airbag housing.
- The front airbags are designed to protect against serious injury. Deployment is very fast and forceful. Depending on variables such as seating position, normal deployment of one or both of the airbags may cause scratches, bruises, swelling or other injuries.
- When installing any extra equipment, make sure that the front airbag system is not damaged. All interference in the system may cause it to fail to work.

WARNING

- Do not use child seats or booster cushions in the front passenger seat. Polestar follows NHTSA's recommendations and recommends that ALL children up to 12 years of age sit in the rear seat. This recommendation particularly applies to children in rear-facing child restraint systems. See also the information on the Occupant Classification System.
- Never drive when the airbags have deployed. It can be difficult to control the car when they are hanging out. Other safety systems may also be damaged.
- Smoke and dust that forms when the airbags are deployed can cause irritation to the skin and eyes with prolonged exposure.

- Children must never sit in the front passenger seat.
- Occupants of the front passenger seat must never sit on the edge of the seat, sit leaning towards the instrument panel or sit in an incorrect position in some other way.
- The back must be as upright as comfort allows and held against the backrest with the seatbelt fastened in the correct way.
- The feet must be on the floor and not on the instrument panel, the seat or sticking out through the window.

WARNING

- • No objects and no extra equipment, e.g. instrument panel covers, may be positioned, attached or fitted near the airbag hatch (the area above the glovebox) or the area affected when the airbag is deployed.
- There must be no loose objects, such as coffee cups, on the floor, seat or instrument panel.
- Never try to open the airbag hatch on the steering wheel or on the passenger side instrument panel. This should only be done by trained and qualified service technicians.
- If these instructions are not followed then the occupants of the car may sustain injury.

NOTE

- The detectors react differently depending on the nature of the collision and whether or not the seatbelts are fastened. Applies to all belt positions.

  It is therefore possible that only one (or none) of the airbags may inflate in a collision. The detectors sense the force of the collision on the vehicle and the action is adapted accordingly so that none, one or more airbags are deployed.

NOTE

- • The front airbags and the seatbelt tensioners may be deployed in a collision. The airbags are only deployed once in an accident. This generates noise and a small amount of powder is released. The release of powder may resemble smoke. This is normal and is not a sign of fire.
- Polestar's front airbags use special detectors that are built into the front seatbelt buckles. The point at which the airbag is deployed is determined by whether the seatbelt is used, and the force of the collision.
- There may be collisions where only one of the airbags is deployed. If the impact is less forceful, but sufficient for a clear risk of injury, the airbags are deployed with lower capacity. If the impact is more forceful, the airbags are deployed at full capacity.

Driver airbag

As a supplement to the seatbelt, the car is equipped with a driver airbag.

Driver side front seat airbag.

In the event of a frontal collision, the airbag helps to protect the head, neck, face and chest of the driver as well as the knees and legs.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the airbag is inflated. The airbag cushions the initial collision impact for the occupant. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. When this occurs, smoke escapes into the car. This is completely normal. The entire process, including inflation and deflation of the airbag, occurs within tenths of a second.

Driver airbag location

This airbag is fitted into the centre of the steering wheel. The steering wheel is marked AIRBAG.

Related information

- Airbags (p. 53)
- Passenger airbag (p. 60)

WARNING

- The seatbelts and airbags interact. If the belt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

  To minimise the risk of injury if the airbag deploys, passengers must sit as upright as possible with their feet on the floor and backs against the backrest.

- Contact Polestar Customer Support for repairs. Defective work in the airbag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

Passenger airbag

As a supplement to the seatbelts, the vehicle is equipped with an airbag on the passenger side in the front seat.

Passenger side front airbag.

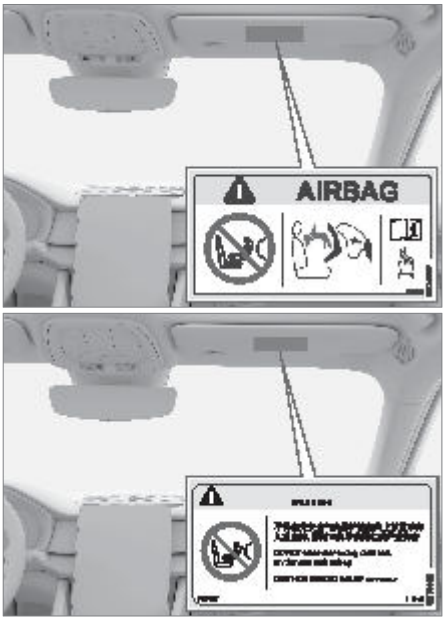
In the event of a frontal collision, the airbag helps to protect the head, neck, face and chest of the passenger as well as the knees and legs.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the airbag is inflated. The airbag cushions the initial collision impact for the occupant. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. When this occurs, smoke escapes into the car. This is completely normal. The entire process, including inflation and deflation of the airbag, occurs within tenths of a second.

Passenger airbag location

The airbag is folded up into a compartment above the glovebox. Its cover panel is marked AIRBAG.

Label for passenger airbag



Label on the passenger side's sun visor.

Label on the passenger side's door pillar. The label becomes visible when the passenger door is opened.

The warning label for the passenger airbag is positioned as shown above.

Related information

- Airbags (p. 53)
- Driver airbag (p. 59)
- Activating and deactivating passenger airbag* (p. 62)

WARNING

- The seatbelts and airbags interact. If the belt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

  To minimise the risk of injury if the airbag deploys, passengers must sit as upright as possible with their feet on the floor and backs against the backrest.

- Contact Polestar Customer Support for repairs. Defective work in the airbag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

- Do not put objects in front of or above the dashboard where the passenger airbag is located.

WARNING

- Specific recommendations according to regulations in the Republic of Korea:
  - A child under the age of 13 may be harmed by the deployment and impact of an airbag.
  - The safest place for a child is the rear seat.
  - Never put a child seat on the front passenger seat.
  - Sit as far back as possible from the airbag.
  - Always use a seat belt and child restraint system.

- If the car is not equipped with a switch to activate/deactivate the passenger airbag, the airbag will always be activated.

- Never allow anybody to stand or sit in front of the front passenger seat.

  Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the airbag is activated.

  Front-facing passengers (children and adults) must never sit on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is deactivated.

  Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

- NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Activating and deactivating passenger airbag*

The passenger airbag can be deactivated if the car is equipped with a switch, Passenger Airbag Cut Off Switch (PACOS).

The switch for the passenger airbag is located on the passenger end of the instrument panel and is accessible when the passenger door is open.

Check that the switch is in the required position.

A - ON - the airbag is activated and all front-facing passengers (children and adults) can sit safely on the passenger seat.

B - OFF - The airbag is deactivated, and children in rear-facing child seats can sit safely on the passenger seat.

Activating passenger airbag

1. Pull the switch outward and turn from OFF to ON.
   > The driver display shows the message Passenger airbag on.
2. Confirm the message by pressing the right-hand steering wheel keypad's O button.

> A text message and a warning symbol in the roof console indicate that the airbag for the front passenger seat is activated.

Deactivating passenger airbag

1. Pull the switch outward and turn from ON to OFF.
   > The driver display shows the message Passenger airbag off.
2. Confirm the message by pressing the right-hand steering wheel keypad's O button.

   > A text message and a symbol in the roof console indicate that the airbag for the front passenger seat is deactivated.

Related information

- Driver and passenger airbags (p. 55)
- Seatbelt tensioner (p. 50)
- Child seats (p. 76)

WARNING

- If the car is not equipped with a switch to activate/deactivate the passenger airbag, the airbag will always be activated.
- Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat when the airbag is activated.

  The passenger airbag must always be activated when front-facing passengers (children and adults) are sitting in the front passenger seat.

  Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.
- Front-facing passengers (children and adults) must never sit on the passenger seat when the airbag is deactivated.

  Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

IMPORTANT

If the passenger airbag is deactivated, the electric seatbelt tensioner on the passenger side will also be deactivated.

Occupant Classification System

NOTE

- If the passenger airbag has been activated/deactivated before the car has been started, the message is shown in the driver display, as well as the following indication in the roof console, approximately 6 seconds after the car has been started.
- If the passenger airbag has been activated/deactivated before the car has been started, the message is shown in the driver display, as well as the following indication in the roof console, approximately 6 seconds after the car has been started.

The Occupant Classification System (OCS) is designed to comply with the requirements prescribed in the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 and is intended to deactivate (not deploy) the front passenger airbag under certain conditions.

OCS indicator lamp.

The front passenger airbag is either activated or deactivated depending on the classification of the occupant of the front passenger seat.

Polestar follows NHTSA's recommendations and recommends that ALL children up to and including 12 years of age sit in the rear seat and are buckled up according to their height and weight. This is strongly recommended for children in rear-facing child seats.

Classification of occupant of front passenger seat	OCS indicator lamp status	Status of front passenger airbag
The occupant is classified as an adult.	OCS indicator lamp is not illuminated.	Activated
The occupant is classified as a small child in a front-facing child seat.	The OCS indication lamp is lit or not lit depending on several parameters that determine the most suitable status.	Activated or deactivated depending on several parameters that determine the most suitable status.
The occupant is classified as a small child in a rear-facing child seat.	OCS indicator lamp is illuminated.	Deactivated
The passenger seat is empty.	OCS indicator lamp is illuminated.	Deactivated

Function of the Occupant Classification System

OCS works together with sensors included in the front passenger seat. The sensors are intended to detect the presence, and classification of, an occupant sitting correctly and determine whether the front passenger airbag should be activated (able to be deployed) or deactivated (cannot be deployed).

OCS uses an indicator lamp with the text PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF that illuminates with a constant glow to remind you that the front passenger airbag has been deactivated. The indicator lamp with the text PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF is fitted in the roof console, close to the interior rearview mirror bracket.

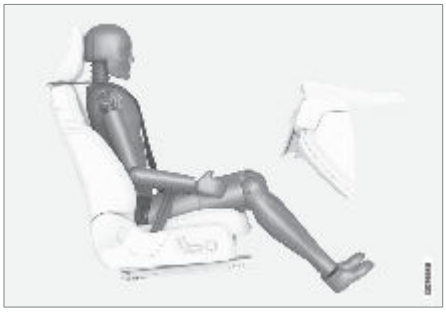
Always pay attention that the status of the indicator lamp shows the correct classification both before and while driving when the front passenger seat is occupied.

If a fault is detected in the system, the OCS indicator lamp remains illuminated and the SRS warning symbol is illuminated in the driver display, together with a text message.

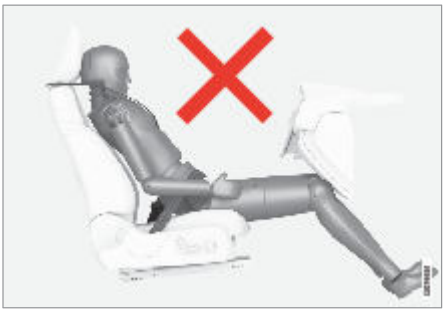
Classification of adults

For a correct classification when an adult is sitting in the front passenger seat, the passenger must:

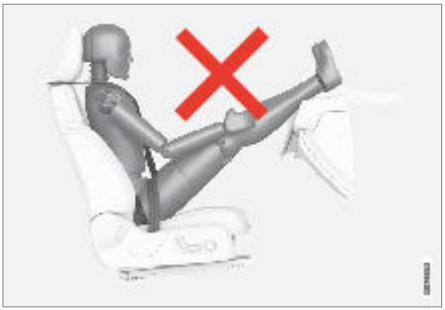
- be wearing the seatbelt
- be sitting normally in the seat, centred on the seat cushion
- be sitting upright in the seat with shoulders against the backrest
- have legs comfortably outstretched with feet on the floor.



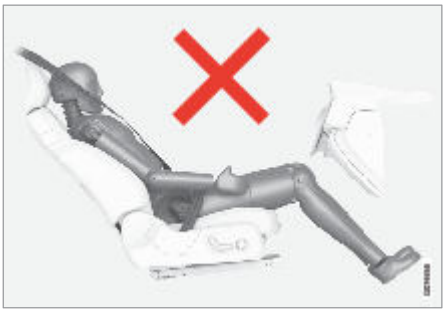
Correct seat position.



Example of incorrect seat position - the passenger must not have slid forward on the seat cushion.



Example of incorrect seating posture - the passenger must not sit with his/her feet anywhere else than on the floor.



Example of incorrect seat position - the passenger must not fold the backrest to a lying position.

Keep the following in mind when an adult is in the front passenger seat:

- The passenger must never get up from the seat cushion using the armrest in the door or centre console, by pushing their feet against the floor or by pushing against the backrest.
- The passenger must never sit on the side of the seat cushion, slide forward on the seat cushion or fold the backrest to a lying position.
- The passenger must never wear wet or thick clothing such as ski wear or padded garments for example.
- Never place any objects between the passenger and the seat cushion, e.g. pillows, heating blankets or ordinary blankets, seat liners or mats.
- Never place a radio transmitter (e.g. hunting radio or walkie-talkie) or device that is being charged (e.g. mobile phone, tablet or computer) on or under the seat squab. Furthermore, do not allow anyone sitting in the passenger seat to use a radio transmitter or a device that is charging.

If an adult is sitting in the front passenger seat and the OCS indicator lamp is illuminated, it may be because the passenger is not sitting correctly.

If this occurs, switch off the car and ask the person to follow the instructions above for a correct classification. Start the car and have the passenger sit in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect the passenger and activate the front passenger airbag.

If the OCS indicator lamp is still illuminated after this procedure, the passenger should be advised to travel in the rear seat.

This may indicate restrictions in the OCS classification ability, e.g. that the person is too light to be classified as an adult. It does not need to indicate an OCS error.

Classification of children

Polestar follows NHTSA's recommendations and recommends that ALL children up to and including 12 years of age sit in the rear seat. This is strongly recommended for children in rear-facing child seats.

For a correct classification of a child if a child seat is nevertheless positioned in the front passenger seat, the child seat must be mounted according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Remember the following if a child in a child seat sits in the front passenger seat:

- Never place any items or accessories on the passenger seat, between the child seat and the seat cushion or near to the seat cushion.
- Never place a radio transmitter (e.g. hunting radio or walkie-talkie) or device that is being charged (e.g. mobile phone, tablet or computer) on the seat squab. Furthermore, do not allow anyone sitting in the passenger seat to use a radio transmitter or a device that is charging.
- Never place wet clothing or fluids on the passenger seat.
- Always correctly position the child seat so that the entire lower section of the child seat rests against the seat cushion.
- Always place a front-facing child seat as far back as possible against the seat back.

Modifications

If you are considering modifying your car in any way to facilitate access for handicapped occupants, for example by changing or adapting the driver or passenger seat and/or airbag system, please contact Polestar Customer Support, or:

In the USA:

Polestar Automotive USA Inc.

Customer Care Center

1 Volvo Drive

P.O. Box 914

Rockleigh, New Jersey 07647

1-800-806-2504

www.polestar.com/us

In Canada:

Polestar Automotive Canada Inc.

9130 Leslie Street, Suite 101

Richmond Hill, ON L4B 0B9

1-800-806-2507

www.polestar.com/ca

Related information

- Driver and passenger airbags (p. 55)

WARNING

- If an error is detected in the system and is indicated according to the description, remember that the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of a collision. In this case, the impact protection system and occupant classification system must be checked by a workshop as soon as possible.
- Failure to follow the advice given above may have an adverse effect on the function of the occupant classification system, which may lead to danger to life or serious personal injury.
- Failure to follow the advice given above may have an adverse effect on the function of the occupant classification system, which may lead to danger to life or serious personal injury.
- Never try to open, remove or repair any components in the OCS system. Contact Polestar Customer Support. Defective work in the OCS system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

  The front passenger seat must not be modified in any way. It could affect OCS system functionality.

NOTE

When the ignition is switched on, the OCS indicator lamp illuminates for several seconds while the system performs a self-test. The indicator lamp then extinguishes or remains switched on, depending on the classification of the passenger in the front passenger seat.

Outer side airbags

The outer side airbags on the driver's and passenger seats act to protect the chest and hips in the event of a collision.

The outer side airbags are fitted in the outer backrest frames of the front seats and help to protect the driver and passengers in the front seat.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the outer side airbags are inflated. The airbag inflates between the occupant and the door panel and thereby cushions the initial impact. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. The outer side airbag is normally inflated only for the seat on the side of the collision.

Side airbags and child seats

The protection provided by the car to children seated in a child seat or on a booster cushion is not diminished by the side airbag.

Related information

- Airbags (p. 53)

WARNING

- Contact Polestar Customer Support for repairs. Defective work in the side airbag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.
- Do not put objects in the area between the outside of the seat and the door panel, since this area is required by the side airbag.

  Polestar recommends the use only of car seat covers approved by Polestar. Other seat covers may impede the operation of the side airbags.
- Side airbags are a supplement the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

Interior side airbags

The interior side airbags on the driver's and passenger seats act to protect the head, chest and hips in the event of a collision.

The interior side airbags are fitted in the inner backrest frames of the front seats and help to protect the driver and passengers in the front seat. The seat is marked AIRBAG.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the interior side airbags are inflated. The airbag inflates between the occupant and the tunnel console and thereby cushions the initial impact. The interior side airbag is normally inflated only for the seat on the opposite side to the collision.

Side airbags and child seats

The protection provided by the car to children seated in a child seat or on a booster cushion is not diminished by the side airbag.

Related information

- Airbags (p. 53)

WARNING

- Contact Polestar Customer Support for repairs. Defective work in the side airbag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.
- Do not put objects in the area between the inside of the seat and the tunnel console, since this area is required by the side airbag.

  Polestar recommends the use only of car seat covers approved by Polestar. Other seat covers may impede the operation of the side airbags.
- Side airbags are a supplement the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

Inflatable curtains

The inflatable curtain, Inflatable Curtain (IC), helps to prevent the driver and passengers from striking their heads on the inside of the car during a collision.

The inflatable curtain is mounted along both sides of the headlining and helps protect the driver and outer seat passengers of the car. The panels are labelled with IC AIRBAG.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the inflatable curtain is inflated.

Related information

- Airbags (p. 53)

WARNING

- Contact Polestar Customer Support for repairs. Defective work in the inflatable curtain system can cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

WARNING

- Never hang or attach heavy items onto the handles in the roof. The hooks are only designed for light coats and jackets (not for solid objects such as umbrellas).

  Do not screw or install anything onto the car's headlining, door pillars or side panels. This could compromise the intended protection. Polestar recommends only using Polestar genuine parts that are approved for fitting within these areas.

- Leave 10 cm (4 inches) space between the load and the side windows if the car is loaded to above the top edge of the door windows. Otherwise, the intended protection of the inflatable curtain, which is concealed in the headlining, may be compromised.

- The inflatable curtain is a supplement to the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

Safety mode

Safety mode is a protective state that is triggered when a collision may have damaged any of the car's vital functions, such as the high voltage system, sensors for any of the safety systems, or the brake system.

If the car has been in a collision, the message Safety mode See Manual may be shown on the driver display with a warning symbol as long as the display is not damaged and the car's electrical system is still in working order. This message means that the car has reduced functionality.

If the car is in safety mode, it is possible to attempt to reset the system in order to start and move the car for a short distance, if in a dangerous traffic situation for example.

Related information

- Safety (p. 40)
- Starting and moving the car after safety mode (p. 72)
- Recovery (p. 499)

WARNING

- Never attempt to repair your car or reset the electronics yourself if the car has been in safety mode. This could result in personal injury or the car not functioning as normal. Contact Polestar Customer Support for help with completing the check and restoring the car to normal status after Safety mode See Manual has been displayed.
- If the car is in safety mode it must not be towed. It must be transported from its location. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

Starting and moving the car after safety mode

If the car is in safety mode, it is possible to attempt to reset the system in order to start and move the car for a short distance, if in a dangerous traffic situation for example.

Reset and start the car after safety mode

1. Check the general damage situation of the car.

   If there is only minor damage, starting can be attempted.

2. Switch off the car manually.

3. Then try to start the car.

   > The car's electronics carry out a systems check and then try to resume normal status. The driver display shows the message Car start System check, wait during this time. This can take up to one minute.

4. Then try to start the car again when the message Car start System check, wait is no longer shown in the driver's display.

Moving the car after safety mode

1. If the driver display shows the message The car is now in normal mode after a start attempt, the car can be carefully moved if standing in a dangerous position.

2. Do not move the car further than necessary.

Related information

- Safety mode (p. 72)
- Starting the car (p. 448)
- Switching off the car (p. 449)
- Recovery (p. 499)

Child safety

WARNING

If the car is in safety mode it must not be towed. It must be transported from its location. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

IMPORTANT

If the message Safety mode See Manual is still shown on the display the car must not be driven or towed but a vehicle recovery service must then be used instead. Even if the car appears to be driveable, hidden damage may make the car impossible to control once moving.

Children must always sit secure while travelling in the car.

The equipment that should be used is selected taking account of the weight and size of the child.

Polestar recommends that children travel in a rear-facing child seat until as late an age as possible, at least until 4 years of age, and then in a front-facing child seat until the child is 140 cm (4 feet 7 inches) tall.

Children of all ages and sizes must always sit correctly secured in the car. Never allow a child to sit on the knee of a passenger.

General information

Polestar recommends correct use of the crash safety system for all occupants of the car including children. Remember that children of all ages and size must always sit correctly secured in the car.

The car is also equipped with ISOFIX/LATCH mountings that facilitate the fitting of child seats.

Some child safety systems are intended for installation in the car using lap belts or the lap part of a three-point belt. These systems can only help to protect a child in a car in case of an accident if used in the correct manner. Children can be in danger, however, in the event of an accident if not secured correctly in the car. If the installation instructions for the child seat are not followed, it may result in the child colliding with parts of the interior in the event of an emergency stop.

Holding a child on your lap is NOT a suitable replacement for a child safety system. In the event of an accident, a child being held on the lap of a passenger may be crushed between the interior of the car and a passenger that is not secured in the car. A child may also be injured by colliding with the interior or being thrown out of the car during a sudden manoeuvre or collision. The same can also occur if the child is travelling without being strapped in. Other occupants must also be correctly secured in order to

reduce the risk of injuring or worsening the injuries to a child.

All states and provinces have legislation regulating how and where a child can travel in a car. Find out what regulations apply in the relevant state or province. Current accident statistics show that children travel more safely in the rear seat than in the front if they are correctly secured. A child safety system helps to protect children in the car. This is what you should look for when choosing a child safety system:

It should have a label certifying it fulfils valid Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS 213) or in Canada, CMVSS 213.

Make sure the child safety system is approved for the height, weight and development of the child - the label required by the standard or regulation, or the instructions for the child seat often contains this information.

We would like you to read the accompanying instructions thoroughly when using a child safety system. Make sure you understand them and can use the device correctly and safely in the car. A child safety system that is used incorrectly may result in more serious injury to both the child and the other occupants in the car.

Once a child has grown out of child seat, the normal seatbelts in the rear seat should be used instead. The best method of protecting a child is to seat him/her on a booster cushion so that the seatbelt is positioned correctly over the hips and shoulder. Legislation in your state or province may stipulate that a child seat or booster cushion be used together with a seatbelt, depending on the age and/or height of the child. Check also local regulations.

Child seats should always be registered.

Polestar's recommendations

Why does Polestar believe children should not sit in the front seat of a car? It's quite simple. A front airbag is a very powerful piece of equipment, which under law is designed to protect an adult.

Due to the size of the airbag and the speed at which it is inflated, a child should never be placed in the front seat even when using a seatbelt or is sitting in a child seat. Remember to always sit children in the rear seat and secure them.

Polestar has some very specific recommendations

- Always use a seatbelt.
- Airbags are a SUPPLEMENTARY safety device that, when used together with a three-point seatbelt, can reduce serious injury in certain types of accidents. Polestar recommends you refrain from deactivating the airbag system in the car.
- Polestar strongly recommends that all occupants in the car are properly secured.
- Polestar follows NHTSA's recommendations and recommends that ALL children up to and including 12 years of age sit in the rear seat. This is strongly recommended for children in rear-facing child seats.

- Drive safely!

Related information

- Safety (p. 40)
- Child seats (p. 76)
- Activating and deactivating the child lock (p. 268)

WARNING

- - Do not use child seats or booster cushions in the front passenger seat. Polestar follows NHTSA's recommendations and recommends that ALL children up to 12 years of age sit in the rear seat. This recommendation particularly applies to children in rear-facing child restraint systems.
  - The temperature in the car can increase very quickly on hot days. Exposure to such high temperatures, even briefly, can cause heat-related injury or death. Small children are particularly at risk. Never leave children unsupervised in a car.

- A child seat must never be re-used if:
  - The car has been involved in a collision, regardless of how minor
  - Its history is unknown
  - It is older than the manufacturer's expiry date

NOTE

- Legal provisions about the type of child seat that must be used for children of different ages and heights vary from country to country. Check what does apply.

- When using child safety equipment, it is important to read the installation instructions included.

  In the event of questions when fitting child safety equipment, contact the manufacturer for clearer instructions.

Child seats

Suitable child seats should always be used when children are travelling in the car.

Children should sit comfortably and safely. Make sure that the child seat is positioned, mounted and used correctly.

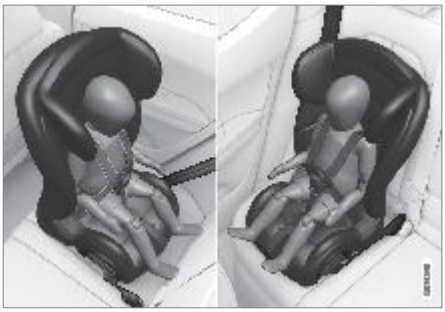
Look in the installation instructions for the child seat for the correct fitting.

Child safety system

Child seat for small children

There are three main types of child safety system: child seat for small children, adjustable child seats and booster cushions. They are often classified according to size and age.

The child seat must be secured using a three-point seatbelt, ISOFIX/LATCH mounting points, other mounting points, or in combination. Always follow the instructions from the child seat manufacturer.



Adjustable child seat

Booster cushion

Automatic locking retractor/emergency locking retractor (ALR/ELR)

In order to facilitate the installation of child seats, all seatbelts (except the driver's) are equipped with a locking mechanism that keeps the belt taut.

When securing the seatbelt on a child seat:

1. Position the child seat and attach it using the seatbelt according to the manufacturer's instructions.

2. Pull out the belt as far as possible.

3. Secure the lock tongue in the buckle (lock) as usual.

4. Release the seatbelt and pull the belt taut around the child seat.

A sound will now be heard from the inertia reel, which is normal. The seatbelt is now locked in place. This function is deactivated automatically when the seatbelt has been released and is fully retracted.

Registration and recall of child seats

Child seats may be recalled for reasons of safety. You must register your child seat so you can be reached in the event of a recall. In order to stay informed concerning recalls of child seats, you must complete and submit the registration card that comes with your new child seat.

Information on recalls of child seats is available in both the USA and Canada. Information on recalls in the USA is obtained from the government's customer centre for car safety on phone number 1-800-424-9393 or at https://www-odi.nhtsa.dot.gov/owners/SearchSafetyIssues. In Canada, visit the website for child safety at Transport Canada at https://www.tc.gc.ca/en/services/road/child-car-seat-safety.html.

Related information

- Child safety (p. 73)
- Child seats for small children (p. 78)
- Adjustable child seats (p. 81)
- Booster cushions (p. 83)
- Upper mounting points for child seats (p. 85)
- Upper mounting points (p. 87)
- Lower mounting points for child seats (p. 88)
- i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats (p. 89)
- Lower ISOFIX/LATCH mounting points (p. 90)
- Child seat positioning (p. 92)
- Activating and deactivating passenger airbag* (p. 62)

WARNING

- A child seat must never be used in the front seat of a vehicle with front passenger airbag - not even if the symbol for "Passenger airbag off" by the rear-view mirror is illuminated. If an accident has sufficient force to deploy the airbag, this may lead to serious injury or death for a child sitting on this seat.
- Always check the manufacturer's instructions for detailed information on how the child seat should be secured.
- • Make sure that the child seat is secured or removed from the passenger compartment when not in use so that it does not injure occupants during sudden braking or a collision.
  - A small child's head represents a significant part of its total weight and its neck is still very weak. Polestar recommends that children up to four years old are conveyed firmly strapped in and rear-facing. Polestar also recommends that children should be conveyed rear-facing and firmly strapped in for as long as possible.
- Do not use child seats or booster cushions in the front passenger seat. We also recommend that children who have grown out of such devices should sit in the rear seat with the seatbelt properly fastened.

Child seats for small children

Suitable child seats must always be used when children (depending on age/size) are sitting in the car.

Secure a child seat for small children with a seatbelt

Do not place child seats for small children in the front passenger seat

1. Place child seats for small children in the rear seat of the vehicle.
2. Attach the seatbelt to the child seat for small children according to the manufacturer's instructions.

NOTE

- When using child safety equipment, it is important to read the installation instructions included.

  In the event of questions when fitting child safety equipment, contact the manufacturer for clearer instructions.

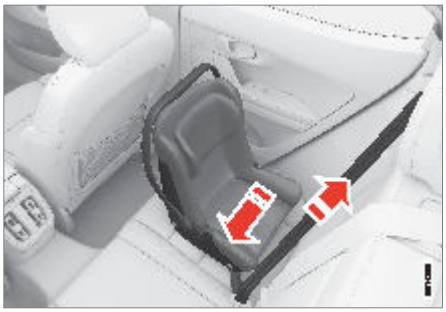
- Never leave a child seat loose in the car. Always secure it according to the instructions for the child seat, even when it is not in use.

- Observe caution when installing child restraint systems so that sharp edges or protruding parts on the child restraint system do not scratch the car's interior.

  Long-term installation and use of child seats may cause wear and tear on the car's fittings.

- Observe caution when installing child restraint systems so that sharp edges or protruding parts on the child restraint system do not scratch the car's interior.

  Long-term installation and use of child seats may cause wear and tear on the car's fittings.



Pull the seatbelt through the child seat for small children.

3.

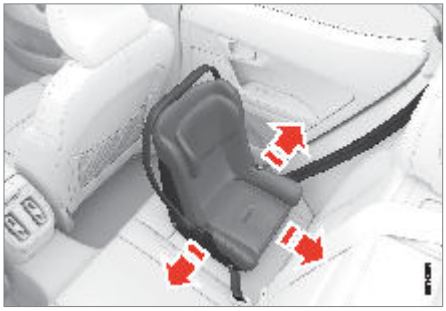
Secure the seatbelt.

Secure the seatbelt by inserting the locking tongue into the buckle until a clicking sound is clearly heard.

Pull out the seatbelt shoulder strap.

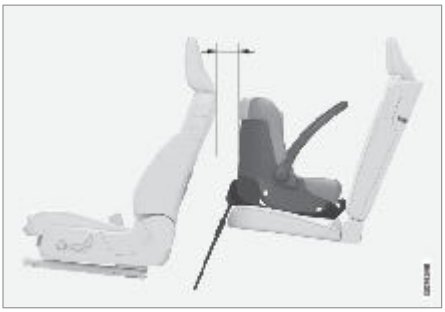
4. Pull out the seatbelt shoulder strap as far as possible until the belt's automatic locking function is activated.

5. Push the child seat for small children firmly into place, allow the seatbelt to retract and then pull it taut. A sound will now be heard from the inertia reel automatic locking function, which is normal. The seatbelt should now be locked in place.



Check that the child seat for small children is fitted securely.

6. Push and pull the child seat for small children along the direction of the seatbelt to make sure it is firmly secured by the seatbelt.



When installing an infant seat in the rear seat, Polestar recommends a distance of at least 50 mm (2 inches) from the front part of the infant seat to the rearmost part of the seat in front.

The child seat for small children can be removed by unbuckling the seatbelt and allowing it to fully retract.

Related information

- Child seats (p. 76)
- Adjustable child seats (p. 81)
- Booster cushions (p. 83)
- Upper mounting points for child seats (p. 85)
- Upper mounting points (p. 87)
- Lower mounting points for child seats (p. 88)
- i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats (p. 89)
- Lower ISOFIX/LATCH mounting points (p. 90)

WARNING

- • A child seat for small children must only be mounted rear-facing.
  - This type of child seat must not be fitted behind the driver's seat if there is insufficient space for it to be fitted safely.
- A child seat must never be used in the front seat of a vehicle with front passenger airbag - not even if the symbol for "Passenger airbag off" by the rear-view mirror is illuminated. If an accident has sufficient force to deploy the airbag, this may lead to serious injury or death for a child sitting on this seat.
- It must not be possible to move the child seat more than 2.5 cm (1 inch) in either direction along the route of the seatbelt.

NOTE

The inertia reel's lock catch is automatically released when the belt is opened and allowed to fully retract.

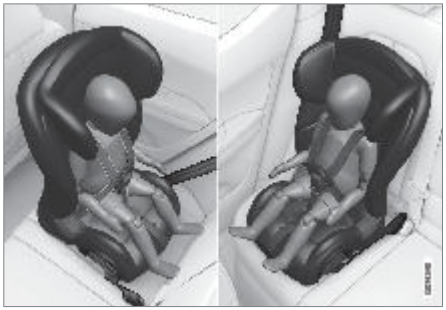
Adjustable child seats

Suitable child seats must always be used when children (depending on age/size) are sitting in the car.

Mounting an adjustable child seat with a seatbelt

Do not place adjustable child seats in front passenger seat.

Adjustable child seats can be used either front or rear facing depending on the age and height of the child.



Pull the seatbelt through the adjustable child seat.

1. Place adjustable child seats on the car's rear seat.
2. Attach the seatbelt to the adjustable child seat according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Secure the seatbelt.

3. Secure the seatbelt by inserting the locking tongue into the buckle until a clicking sound is clearly heard.
4. Pull out the seatbelt shoulder strap as far as possible until the belt's automatic locking function is activated.

5. Push the adjustable child seat firmly into place, allow the seatbelt to retract and then pull it taut. A sound will now be heard from the inertia reel automatic locking function, which is normal. The seatbelt should now be locked in place.

Pull out the seatbelt shoulder strap.

6. Push and pull the adjustable child seat along the direction of the seatbelt to make sure it is firmly secured by the seatbelt.

The adjustable child seat can be removed by unbuckling the seatbelt and allowing it to fully retract.

Check that the adjustable child seat is firmly secured.

Related information

- Child seats (p. 76)
- Child seats for small children (p. 78)
- Booster cushions (p. 83)
- Upper mounting points for child seats (p. 85)
- Upper mounting points (p. 87)
- Lower mounting points for child seats (p. 88)
- i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats (p. 89)
- Lower ISOFIX/LATCH mounting points (p. 90)

WARNING

- Always use an adjustable child seat suitable for the age and size of the child. See the manufacturer's recommendations.
- • A small child's head represents a significant part of its total weight and its neck is still very weak. Polestar recommends that children up to four years old are conveyed firmly strapped in and rear-facing. Polestar also recommends that children should be conveyed rear-facing and firmly strapped in for as long as possible.
  - Adjustable child seats must only be fitted on the rear seat.
  - A rear-facing child seat must not be fitted behind the driver's seat if there is insufficient space for it to be fitted safely.

Booster cushions

WARNING

- It must not be possible to move the child seat more than 2.5 cm (1 inch) in either direction along the route of the seatbelt.
- A child seat must never be used in the front seat of a vehicle with front passenger airbag - not even if the symbol for "Passenger airbag off" by the rear-view mirror is illuminated. If an accident has sufficient force to deploy the airbag, this may lead to serious injury or death for a child sitting on this seat.

NOTE

The inertia reel's lock catch is automatically released when the belt is opened and allowed to fully retract.

Suitable child seats must always be used when children (depending on age/size) are sitting in the car.

Fastening a booster cushion

Position the child correctly on the booster cushion.

Booster cushions are recommended for children who have outgrown child seats.

1. Place the booster cushion on the car's rear seat.
2. Once the child is seated correctly on the booster cushion, secure the seatbelt to or around the booster cushion according to the manufacturer's instructions.

3. Secure the seatbelt by inserting the locking tongue into the buckle until a clicking sound is clearly heard.

Positioning the seatbelt.

4. Make sure the seatbelt is tight and holding the child securely.

Related information

- Child seats (p. 76)
- Adjustable child seats (p. 81)
- Child seats for small children (p. 78)
- Upper mounting points for child seats (p. 85)
- Upper mounting points (p. 87)
- Lower mounting points for child seats (p. 88)
- i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats (p. 89)
- Lower ISOFIX/LATCH mounting points (p. 90)

WARNING

- The hip section of the three-point seatbelt must be a close fit across the child's hips, not across the stomach.
- The shoulder strap of the three-point seatbelt must be routed over the chest and shoulder.
- The shoulder belt must never be routed behind the child's back or under its arm.

Upper mounting points for child seats

The car is equipped with upper mounting points for child seats in the front seat* and the outer rear seats.

The car is equipped with upper mounting points for child seats on the rear seat's outer seats.

The upper mounting points are primarily intended for use with front-facing child seats.

Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions when connecting a child seat to the upper mounting points.

The location of the mounting points

Mounting point location for the front seat is indicated by a symbol on the rear of the front seat.

The mounting point for the front seat* is located on the lower part of the rear of the front seat.

Mounting point locations for the rear seat are indicated by symbols on the rear of the backrest.

The mounting points for the rear seat are located on the rear of the rear seat's outer seats.

Specific information for Australia

To comply with Australian requirements all Polestar cars are fitted with Child Restraint Upper Anchorages for the rear seat The following additional information should be read in conjunction with the above information.

The reason for this legislation is to provide upper anchorages for the attachment of Child Restraints and facilitate the transfer of Child Restraints from one car to another, since they would have similar Upper Restraint Anchorages fitted as standard.

The red arrow points towards the front of the car.

The three anchorages are located on the back of the rear seat backrests.

Refer to the manufacturers' instructions for securing your child seat.

Related information

- Child seats (p. 76)
- Lower mounting points for child seats (p. 88)
- i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats (p. 89)
- Lower ISOFIX/LATCH mounting points (p. 90)
- Overview table for location of child seats (p. 96)
- Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts (p. 97)

WARNING

- The child seat's upper straps must be routed through the hole in the head restraint leg before they are tensioned at the mounting point. If this is not possible, follow the recommendations from the child seat manufacturer.
- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seatbelts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

NOTE

- Adjust the seat's head restraint in order to facilitate the installation of child restraint systems.
- The parcel shelf must be removed before child restraint systems can be installed in the mounting points.

Upper mounting points

The car is equipped with upper mounting points for child seats in the rear seat.

Mounting points for child seats

Upper mounting points and symbols on rear of rear seat backrest.

Mounting a child seat

1. Position the child seat on the rear seat.
2. Pull the strap for the upper mounting point under the head restraint and secure it to the mounting point.
3. Attach the strap for the lower mounting points to the lower ISOFIX/LATCH mounting points. If the child seat is not equipped with straps for the lower mounting points, follow the instructions for mounting a child seat using a seatbelt with automatic locking.
4. Tighten all straps securely.

See also the manufacturer's instructions for information concerning the installation of a child seat.

Related information

- Child seats (p. 76)
- Lower mounting points for child seats (p. 88)
- i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats (p. 89)
- Lower ISOFIX/LATCH mounting points (p. 90)

WARNING

- Always check the recommendations provided by the child seat's manufacturer.
- Polestar recommends that the upper mounting points are used when a front-facing child seat is fitted.
- Never route the strap over the upper part of the head restraint to an upper mounting point. The strap must be routed under the head restraint.
- The mounting points for child seats are only designed to withstand loads from correctly fitted child seats. They must not be used for adult seatbelts or harnesses under any circumstances. The mounting points do not withstand the large forces they are subjected to in a collision if adult safety harnesses or seatbelts are fitted in them. An adult using a belt attached in a mounting point for child seats is at great risk of serious injury in the event of a collision.
- Do not install rear speakers that require the removal of the upper mounting points or affect the correct use of the strap for the upper mounting point.

Lower mounting points for child seats

NOTE

The parcel shelf must be removed before child restraint systems can be installed in the mounting points.

The car is equipped with lower mounting points for child seats in the front seat* and rear seat.

The car is equipped with lower mounting points for child seats in the rear seat.

The lower mounting points are designed to be used in conjunction with certain rear-facing child seats.

Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions when connecting a child seat to the lower mounting points.

The location of the mounting points

Mounting point locations for the front seat.

The mounting points for the front seat* are located on the sides of the passenger seat's leg-room.

i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats

Mounting point locations for the rear seat.

The mounting points for the rear seat are located on the rear section of the front seat's floor rails.

Related information

- Child seats (p. 76)
- Upper mounting points for child seats (p. 85)
- Upper mounting points (p. 87)
- i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats (p. 89)
- Lower ISOFIX/LATCH mounting points (p. 90)
- Overview table for location of child seats (p. 96)
- Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts (p. 97)

NOTE

Never store loose objects around the support legs of child restraint systems. Ensure that the loose parts of child restraint systems (such as retaining straps) are fastened according to the mounting instructions for the child restraint system.

The car is equipped with i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats in the front seat* and rear seat.

The car is equipped with i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats in the rear seat.

i-Size/ISOFIX[4] is a fixture system for car child seats that is based on an international standard.

Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions when connecting a child seat to the i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points.

The location of the mounting points

Mounting point locations for the front seat are indicated by symbols on the upholstery of the backrest.

The mounting points for i-Size/ISOFIX for the front seat are concealed behind the lower section of the passenger seat's backrest.

Press the seat cushion down to access the mounting points.

4 Names and symbols change depending on market.

Lower ISOFIX/LATCH mounting points

Mounting point locations for the rear seat are indicated by symbols[4] on the covers that conceal the mounting points.

The mounting points for i-Size/ISOFIX for the rear seat are located behind covers in the lower section of the rear seat's backrest, in the outer seats.

To access the mounting points, remove the covers. Locate the mounting points that may be positioned some way in behind the covers.

Related information

- Child seats (p. 76)
- Upper mounting points for child seats (p. 85)
- Upper mounting points (p. 87)
- Lower mounting points for child seats (p. 88)
- Overview table for location of child seats (p. 96)
- Table for location of i-Size child seats (p. 99)
- Table for location of ISOFIX child seats (p. 100)

The lower mounting points on ISOFIX/LATCH equipped child seats are on the outer rear seats.

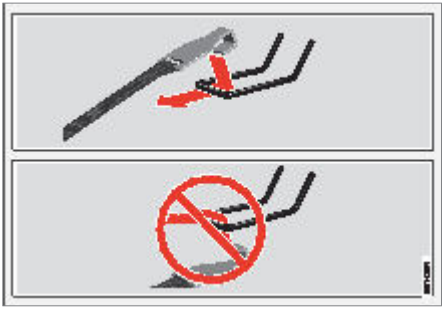
Use the lower ISOFIX/LATCH mounting points for child seats

Locations of ISOFIX/LATCH mounting points

Symbols on the covers indicate the location of the ISOFIX/LATCH mounting points as illustrated below. The mounting points are located behind covers between the backrest and seat cushion. Always follow the child seat manufacturer's mounting instructions and use both the lower ISOFIX/LATCH mounting points and the upper mounting points whenever this is possible.

Accessing the mounting points

1. Place the child seat in the correct position.
2. Locate the mounting points by opening the covers.
3. Fasten the lower straps of the child seat to the lower ISOFIX/LATCH mounting points.
4. Tighten the lower straps of the child seat firmly according to the manufacturer's instructions.



Fasten the bracket properly to the lower ISOFIX/LATCH mounting points

Related information

- Child seats (p. 76)
- Upper mounting points for child seats (p. 85)
- Upper mounting points (p. 87)
- i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats (p. 89)
- Lower ISOFIX/LATCH mounting points (p. 90)

WARNING

- Polestar's ISOFIX/LATCH mounting points meet the FMVSS/CMVSS standards. Always check in the child seat's instructions for use in order to identify the weight and height it is designed for.

WARNING

- • Check that the bracket is correctly attached in the mounting point (see illustration). If the bracket is not correctly attached then the child seat may not be properly secured in the event of a collision.
  - The lower ISOFIX/LATCH mounting points for child seats are only designed for use with child seats fitted on the outer seats. These mounting points are not certified for use with any child seat fitted on the centre seat. When a child seat is secured on the centre seat, you must only use the car's centre seatbelt.

NOTE

- The centre seat in the rear seat is not equipped with ISOFIX/LATCH mounting points. If a child seat is fitted in this seat the upper strap of the seat (if available) must be attached at the mounting point for this strap and the child seat attached using the car's centre seatbelt.
- Follow the mounting instructions from the child seat manufacturer and use both the lower ISOFIX/LATCH mounting points and the upper mounting points where this is possible.

Child seat positioning

It is important to position the child seat in the right place in the car. The choice of location depends, amongst other things, on the type of child seat and whether the passenger airbag is activated.

Rear-facing child seat and airbag are not compatible.

Always fit rear-facing child seats in the rear seat if the passenger airbag is activated. If a child is sitting on the front passenger seat then he/she could suffer serious injury if the airbag deploys.

If the passenger airbag is deactivated then rear-facing child seats can be fitted on the front passenger seat.

Label for passenger airbag

Label on the passenger side's sun visor.

Label on the passenger side's door pillar. The label becomes visible when the passenger door is opened.

The warning label for the passenger airbag is positioned as shown above.

Specific information for Australia

The following additional information should be read in conjunction with the above information.

Refer to the manufacturers' instructions for securing your child seat.

Related information

- Child seats (p. 76)
- Child seat mounting (p. 94)
- Overview table for location of child seats (p. 96)
- Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts (p. 97)
- Table for location of i-Size child seats (p. 99)
- Table for location of ISOFIX child seats (p. 100)

WARNING

- Never allow anybody to stand or sit in front of the front passenger seat.

  Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the airbag is activated.

  Front-facing passengers (children and adults) must never sit on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is deactivated.

  Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

- Extreme Hazard!

  Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seatbelts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

NOTE

Regulations regarding the placement of children in cars vary from country to country. Check what does apply.

Child seat mounting

It is important to remember a number of things when a child restraint system is mounted and used, which depend on where the child restraint system is positioned.

Regardless of location

- Only use child restraint systems that are recommended by Polestar, universally approved or are semi-universal/vehicle-specific, and where the car is included on the manufacturer's vehicle list.
- If the child seat is equipped with support legs, always fit the support leg/support legs directly to the floor. Never fit a support leg to a footrest or other object.
- When fitting adjustable, rear-facing child seats, the child seat must be adjusted so that the older the child is, the more upright the position is.

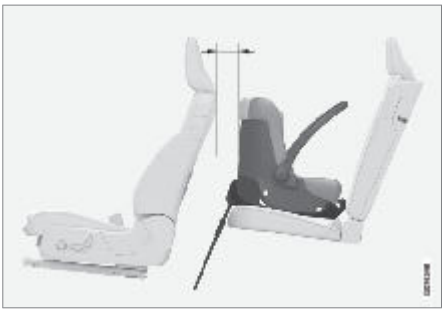
Installation in the front seat

- When using front-facing booster seats and loose booster cushions where the child uses the car's seatbelt, raise the front seat if necessary so that the seatbelt strap can be tensioned around the child's hips.
- When fitting rear-facing child seats, check that the passenger airbag is deactivated.
- When fitting front-facing child seats, check that the passenger airbag is activated.
- When fitting rear-facing child restraint systems, lower the front seat to its lowest position unless otherwise specified in the relevant table for the location of child restraint systems.
- When fitting rear-facing child restraint systems, slide the front seat forward so that the child restraint system is in contact with or comes as close as possible to the instrument panel.
- ISOFIX child seats can only be fitted when the car is equipped with the ISOFIX console[5].
- The passenger seat is equipped with the ISOFIX fixture system and is approved for i-Size[5].
- The passenger seat is equipped with upper mounting point[5]. Polestar recommends routing the child seat's upper straps through the hole in the head restraint before they are tensioned at the mounting point. If this is not possible, follow the recommendations from the child seat manufacturer.
- If the child seat is equipped with lower straps, Polestar recommends that the lower mounting points are used with these[5].

Installation in the rear seat

- A child seat with support legs must not be fitted in the centre seat.
- The outer seats are equipped with the ISOFIX fixture system and are approved for i-Size[5].
- The outer seats are equipped with upper mounting points. Polestar recommends routing the child seat's upper straps through the hole in the head restraint before they are tensioned at the mounting point. If this is not possible, follow the recommendations from the child seat manufacturer.
- If the child seat is equipped with lower straps, never adjust the position of the seat in front after the straps have been fitted in the lower mounting points. Always remember to remove the lower straps when the child seat is not installed.

5 Varies depending on market.



With the installation of an infant seat in the rear seat, Polestar recommends a distance of at least 50 mm (2 inches) from the front part of the infant seat to the rearmost part of the seat in front.

Related information

- Child seat positioning (p. 92)
- Overview table for location of child seats (p. 96)
- Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts (p. 97)
- Table for location of i-Size child seats (p. 99)
- Table for location of ISOFIX child seats (p. 100)

WARNING

Child restraint systems with steel braces or some other design that could rest on the seatbelt buckle's opening button must not be used, as they could cause the seatbelt buckle to open accidentally.

Do not secure the straps for the child restraint system into the seat's horizontal adjustment bar or in springs, rails or beams under the seat. Sharp edges may damage the straps.

Do not allow the upper section of the child restraint system to rest against the windscreen.

NOTE

- When using child safety equipment, it is important to read the installation instructions included.

  In the event of questions when fitting child safety equipment, contact the manufacturer for clearer instructions.

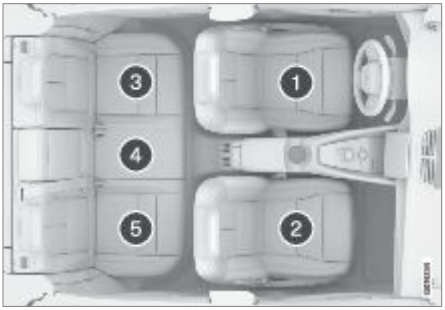
- Never leave a child seat loose in the car. Always secure it according to the instructions for the child seat, even when it is not in use.

- Observe caution when installing child restraint systems so that sharp edges or protruding parts on the child restraint system do not scratch the car's interior.

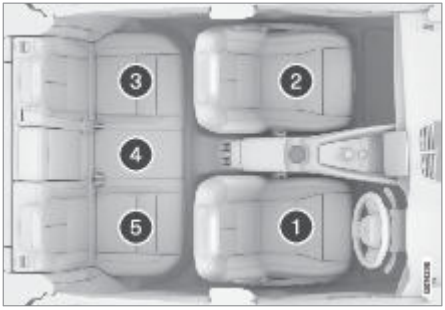
  Long-term installation and use of child seats may cause wear and tear on the car's fittings.

Overview table for location of child seats

The table gives an overview of the types of child seats suitable for the car's seats.



Seat positions in left-hand drive cars.



Seat positions in right-hand drive cars.

	i-Size child seats	Universally approved child seats secured using the car's seatbelt	Other child seat categories[A]
Seat position[B]	2[C, D], 3, 5	2[C], 3, 4, 5	2[C], 3, 4[E], 5

A For more information, contact the child seat manufacturer.
B According to the numbering above.
C Activated airbag for front-facing child seats. Deactivated airbag for rear-facing child seats.
D Varies depending on market.
E Does not apply for child restraint systems with support legs.

Related information

- Child seat positioning (p. 92)
- Child seat mounting (p. 94)
- Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts (p. 97)
- Table for location of i-Size child seats (p. 99)
- Table for location of ISOFIX child seats (p. 100)

WARNING

When front-facing child seats are fitted on the front passenger seat (seat position 2), the passenger airbag must be activated.

When rear-facing child seats are fitted on the front passenger seat (seat position 2), the passenger airbag must be deactivated.

Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts

The table gives a recommendation for which child seats suit which locations, and for what size of child.

Weight	Front seat (with deactivated airbag, only rear-facing child seats)[A]	Front seat (with activated airbag, only front-facing child seats)[A]	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
Group 0 max 10 kg	U[B, C, D]	X	U[D]	U[D]
Group 0+ max 13 kg	U[B, C, D]	X	U[D]	U[D]
Group 1 9-18 kg	L	UF[B, C, E, F]	U[E, F], L	U[E, F]
Group 2 15-25 kg	L	UF[B, C, F]	U[F], L	U[F]
Group 3 22-36 kg	X	UF[B, C, G]	U[G]	U[G]

U: Suitable for universal category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF: Suitable for front-facing universally approved child seats.

L: Suitable for particular child restraints. These restraints may be of the specific vehicle, restricted or semi-universal categories.

X: The seat is not suitable for children in this mass group.

A The seat cushion extension must always be retracted for the installation of child restraint systems.
B Adjust the seat to a more raised position.
C Adjust the backrest inclination, as well as seat cushion height and inclination if necessary.
D Polestar recommends: Maxi Cosi Cabriofix (type approval E4 04443517).
E Polestar recommends rear-facing child seat for children in this mass group.
F Polestar recommends: Booster cushion with and without backrest (type approval E5 04216); Volvo booster seat (type approval E1 04301312)/Römer KidFix SL (type approval E1 04301312).
G Polestar recommends: Booster cushion with and without backrest (type approval E5 04216); Volvo booster seat (type approval E1 04301312)/Römer KidFix SL (type approval E1 04301312); Nania/OSANN Junior (type approval ECE R44: E24 – 040148).

Related information

- Child seat positioning (p. 92)
- Child seat mounting (p. 94)
- Overview table for location of child seats (p. 96)
- Table for location of i-Size child seats (p. 99)
- Table for location of ISOFIX child seats (p. 100)
- Seatbelts (p. 46)

WARNING

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger air-bag is activated.

NOTE

Always read the Manual section on installing a child seat before installing one in the car.

Table for location of i-Size child seats

The table gives a recommendation for which i-Size child seats suit which locations, and for what size of child.

The child seat must be approved in accordance with UN Reg R129.

Type of child seat	Front seat (with deactivated airbag, only rear-facing child seats)[A]	Front seat (with activated airbag, only front-facing child seats)[A]	Rear seat, outer seat[A]	Centre rear seat
i-Size child seats	Yes[B, C, D, E]	Yes[C, D, E]	Yes[B]	No

A Polestar recommends that children should travel in rear-facing child restraint systems for as long as possible, at least until 4 years of age.
B Polestar recommends: BeSafe iZi Kid X2 i-Size (type approval E4-129R-000002).
C Adjust the backrest so that the head restraint does not interfere with the child seat.
D For child restraint systems with support legs, adjust the seat to a more upright position.
E Varies depending on market.

Related information

- Child seat positioning (p. 92)
- Child seat mounting (p. 94)
- Overview table for location of child seats (p. 96)
- Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts (p. 97)
- Table for location of ISOFIX child seats (p. 100)
- i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats (p. 89)
- Lower ISOFIX/LATCH mounting points (p. 90)

NOTE

Always read the Manual section on installing a child seat before installing one in the car.

Table for location of ISOFIX child seats

The table gives a recommendation for which ISOFIX child seats suit which locations, and for what size of child.

The child seat must be approved in accordance with UN Reg R44 and the car model must be included in the manufacturer's vehicle list.

Weight	Size class[A]	Type of child seat	Front seat (with deactivated airbag, only rear-facing child seats)[B, C, D]	Front seat (with activated airbag, only front-facing child seats)[B, C, D]	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
Group 0 max 10 kg	E	Rear-facing infant seat	IL[B], X[E]	X	IL	X
Group 0+ max 13 kg	E	Rear-facing infant seat	IL[B, F], X[E]	X	IL	X
	C	Rear-facing child seat				
	D	Rear-facing child seat				
Group 1 9-18 kg	A	Front-facing child seat	X	IL[B, F, G], X[E]	IL[G], IUF[G]	X
	B	Front-facing child seat				
	B1	Front-facing child seat				
	C	Rear-facing child seat	IL[B, F, H], X[E]	X	IL[H]	X
	D	Rear-facing child seat				

Weight	Size class[A]	Type of child seat	Front seat (with deactivated airbag, only rear-facing child seats)[B, C, D]	Front seat (with activated airbag, only front-facing child seats)[B, C, D]	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
Group 2/3 15-36 kg	–	Front-facing child seat	X	IL	IL	X
IL: Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems. These child restraint systems are those of the specific vehicle, restricted or semi-universal categories. IUF: Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in the mass group. X: Not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems.						

A For child restraint systems with the ISOFIX fixture system there is a size classification to help users choose the right type of child restraint system. The size class can be read on the label for the child restraint system.
B Works for the installation of i-Size child restraint systems and ISOFIX child restraint systems (IL) if the passenger seat is equipped with ISOFIX mountings (varies depending on market) and is i-Size-marked. The upper mounting point for child restraint systems is only available for an i-Size-marked position.
C The seat cushion extension must always be retracted for the installation of child restraint systems.
D For child restraint systems with support legs, adjust the seat to a more upright position.
E Applicable if the car is not fitted with an ISOFIX bracket.
F Adjust the backrest so that the head restraint does not interfere with the child seat.
G Polestar recommends rear-facing child seat for children in this mass group.
H Polestar recommends: BeSafe iZi Kid X2 i-Size (type approval E4-129R-000002).

Related information

- Child seat positioning (p. 92)
- Child seat mounting (p. 94)
- Overview table for location of child seats (p. 96)
- Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts (p. 97)
- Table for location of i-Size child seats (p. 99)
- i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats (p. 89)
- Lower ISOFIX/LATCH mounting points (p. 90)

WARNING

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated.

NOTE

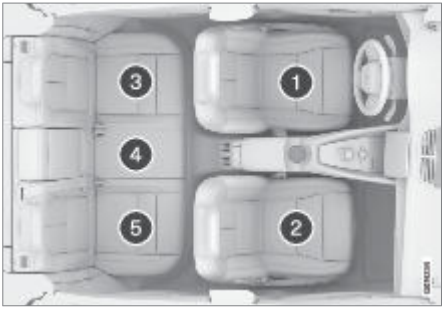
- Always read the Manual section on installing a child seat before installing one in the car.

NOTE

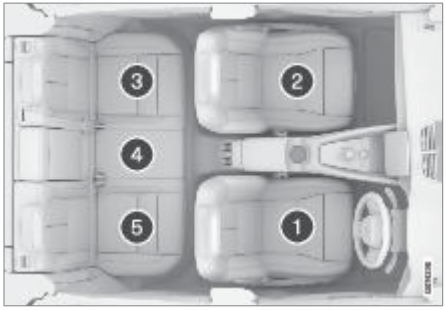
- If an ISOFIX child seat has no size classification, the car model must be included on the vehicle list for the child seat.

Detail information for child seat manufacturers

The table provides detailed information for child seat manufacturers on which locations in the car are appropriate for which types of child seat.



Seat positions in left-hand drive cars.



Seat positions in right-hand drive cars.

Seat position[A]	1	2 (with deactivated airbag, only rear-facing child seats)[B, C]	2 (with activated airbag, only front-facing child seats)[B, C]	3[C]	4[D]	5[C]
Seat position suitable for universal category restraints which are attached using the car's seatbelt (Yes/No).	No	Yes[E]	Yes[E]	Yes	Yes	Yes
Seat position for i-Size (Yes/No)	No	Yes[F, G]	Yes[F, G]	Yes	No	Yes
Seat position lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2/R3/No)	No	R3[H]	No	R3	No	R3

Seat position[A]	1	2 (with deactivated airbag, only rear-facing child seats)[B, C]	2 (with activated airbag, only front-facing child seats)[B, C]	3[C]	4[D]	5[C]
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F1/F2/F2x/F3/No)	No	No	F3[E, H]	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3/No)	No	No	B3	B3	No	B3

A In accordance with illustration.
B The seat cushion extension must always be retracted for the installation of child restraint systems.
C A child seat with support legs can be used on this seat.
D A child seat with support legs cannot be used on this seat.
E Adjust the backrest to a more upright position.
F Varies depending on market.
G For child restraint systems with support legs, adjust the seat to a more upright position.
H Works for the installation of i-Size child restraint systems and ISOFIX child restraint systems (IL) if the passenger seat is equipped with ISOFIX mountings (varies depending on market) and is i-Size-marked. The upper mounting point for child restraint systems is only available for an i-Size-marked position.

Important – Safety

Important information to read about safety.

Always check around the car before opening the doors.

Watch out for cars behind you or other traffic on the road.

- Close the doors properly. Otherwise, the doors may suddenly open while driving, which could lead to serious accidents.

The seatbelt must always be correctly fastened

Do not let passengers sit in places where the seat belt is damaged.

- Push the seatbelt buckle firmly into the lock. Ensure that passengers use the seatbelts.

Airbags supplement the seatbelts

The seatbelts must always be used even if the car is equipped with airbags.

- If the seatbelt is not worn or is worn incorrectly, there is a risk of serious injury due to impact on activation of an airbag.
- Explain the airbag system's safety instructions to your passengers.
- Airbags are made of fabric and are deployed at very high speeds. They can cause burns or abrasions on the skin because of the heat that develops when the airbag is deployed.

Always follow the safety precautions for passenger airbag and location of child restraint systems

- Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat when the passenger airbag is activated.
- Front-facing passengers (children and adults) must never sit on the passenger seat when the airbag is deactivated.
- Failure to follow the advice given above could lead to danger to life or serious personal injury.

Passengers including children on rear seats must always wear seatbelts

- If a child is so short that the seatbelt touches his or her neck or chin, a child seat must be used.
- If the seatbelt does not fit properly, serious injury may result due to heavy impact on the head and abdomen in a collision.

Do not mix up the floor mats for the driver and passenger seats.

They must fit correctly and be securely fastened so as not to get caught around and under the accelerator pedal.

- Make sure that the floor mat for the driver's seat is properly secured before starting the car.
- f a floor mat is unsecured, folded double or incorrectly fitted, it may get caught around or under the pedal and cause the car to start abruptly.
- Do not place a floor mat on top of the accelerator pedal. It is very dangerous because the pedal cannot return to its upper position.

Take your children with you when leaving your car

- It is very dangerous to leave a child unattended in the car. In sunny weather in particular, the temperature of the passenger compartment and of seatbelts and seats can be very high, putting children at risk of heatstroke or burns.
- Children may operate power windows or other equipment or even start the car, resulting in serious injury, fire or accident.

Always use a fuse of the same colour and amperage

If you replace a fuse with one that has a higher amperage than that specified then it will not be triggered in the event of overload, resulting in damage to cables and electrical systems, as well as the risk of fire.

Airbags (airbags at the driver's seat and passenger seat, side airbags, inflatable curtains) may not always activate in the event of an accident

- Airbags may not always activate depending on the position/angle and impact of the collision.
- On colliding at an angle with a wall, guard rail or other cars.
- When trapped under the back of a truck.
- In the event of rear-end collision, overturning or roll-over.
- When the direction of the collision is off the centre of the car.
- If the car crashes into an electricity pole or road sign.
- In a side impact collision with parts other than the front, a rear wing, or the passenger area.
- In a side impact collision with an electricity pole.
- In a side impact collision at an angle to the passenger area.
- In a side impact collision with a motorcycle.

Airbags may activate even if the damage appears slight

- On collision with an object on the road or kerb.
- When the car gets stuck in or drives over a pothole or ditch on the road.
- On heavy impact against the underbody.
- When the car crashes into a traffic island.

If the car falls into deep water

How to escape from a car that has fallen into deep water:

- Door locks and power windows do not work in water so there is a risk of passengers becoming trapped in the car. In which case use an emergency hammer (available at car accessory shops).
- When the car is floating it is not possible to open the doors because of the pressure of the water. Remain calm and undo the seatbelt. If possible, open a window and leave the car.
- If it is not possible to open a window, break open a door window above the water level using an emergency hammer and leave the car. If it is possible to open the door locks, another way is to wait until the water level inside and outside the car is about the same. Then open the door and leave the car.

Two people must never share one seatbelt

- In the event of a collision, occupants sharing a seatbelt risk being crushed together and injured. The seatbelt does not work as intended.

Do not route the shoulder belt behind the shoulder

Do not route the belt below the forearm. Do not twist the belt, and make sure it is tensioned.

- If the wearer slides underneath the belt in a collision, serious injury may result from the hip strap cutting into the abdomen.

Never allow a child to stand in front of an airbag or sit in the passenger's lap while the car is being driven

The child's life is in danger if the airbag deploys. Always use child seats when travelling with children.

Do not allow a child to operate doors, power windows, or the panoramic roof

- There is a danger of injury by trapping his/her hands or head when closing.
- It is very dangerous to open the doors while driving or without watching the traffic behind your car.

Do not leave a child in the car unattended with the key left in the car

- Children may operate power windows or other equipment or even start the car, resulting in serious injury, fire or accident.
- Take your children with you when leaving your car. Remove the key from the car.

The owner must never repair or replace airbags

- Contact Polestar Customer Support for repairs and replacements. Work on the airbag system can cause faults and result in serious personal injury.

Related information

- Safety (p. 40)

Section 04

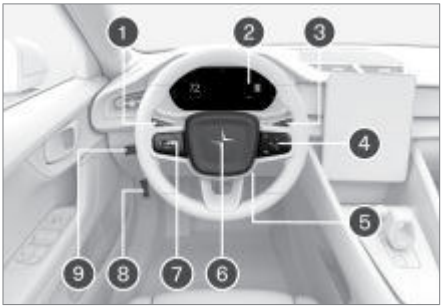
—

Displays and voice control

Displays and controls by the driver in a left-hand drive car

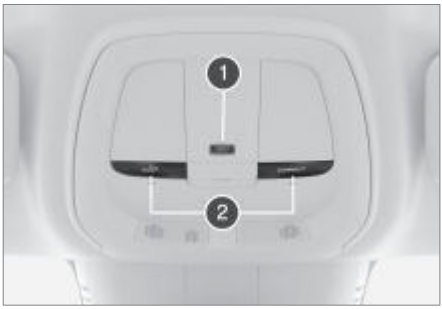
The overviews show where the displays and controls by the driver are located.

Steering wheel and instrument panel



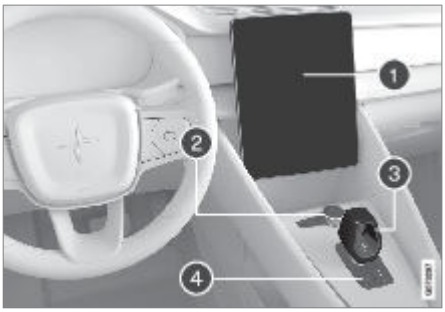
1. Position lamps, daytime running lights, dipped beam, main beam, direction indicators, rear fog lamp, resetting the trip meter
2. Driver display
3. Wipers and washing, rain sensor
4. Right-hand steering wheel keypad
5. Steering wheel adjustment
6. Horn
7. Left-hand steering wheel keypad
8. Bonnet opening
9. Unlocking/opening/closing of tailgate

Roof console



1. Front reading lamps and interior lighting
2. Display in roof console, SOS and CONNECT button

Centre and tunnel console

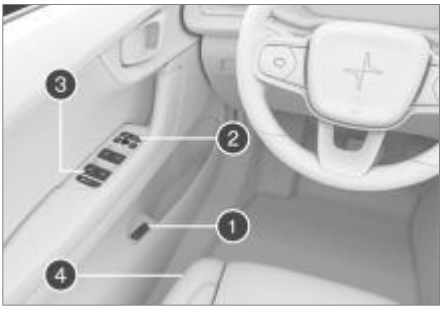


1. Centre display
2. Hazard warning flashers, defrosting, media
3. Gear selector
4. Parking brake

Displays and controls by the driver in a right-hand drive car

The overviews show where the displays and controls by the driver are located.

Driver's door

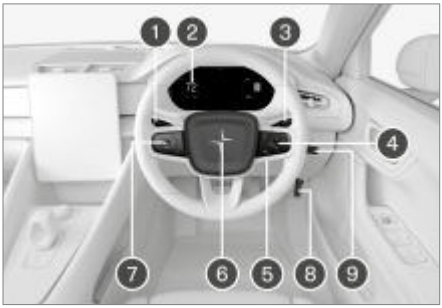


1. Memory for settings for power front seat
2. Central locking and door mirrors
3. Electric windows and child locks
4. Adjusting front seat

Related information

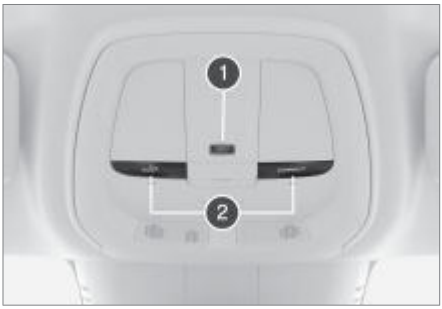
- Adjusting the power front seat (p. 214)
- Adjusting the steering wheel (p. 223)
- Lighting control (p. 178)
- Starting the car (p. 448)
- Driver display (p. 114)
- Overview of centre display (p. 146)
- Gear positions (p. 462)

Steering wheel and instrument panel



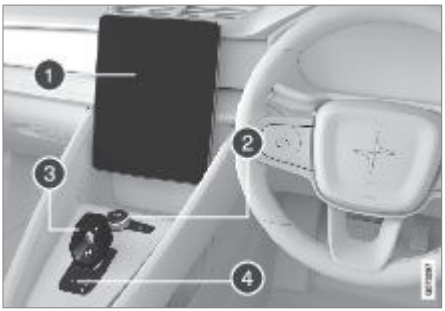
1. Position lamps, daytime running lights, dipped beam, main beam, direction indicators, rear fog lamp, resetting the trip meter
2. Driver display
3. Wipers and washing, rain sensor
4. Right-hand steering wheel keypad
5. Steering wheel adjustment
6. Horn
7. Left-hand steering wheel keypad
8. Bonnet opening
9. Unlocking/opening/closing of tailgate

Roof console



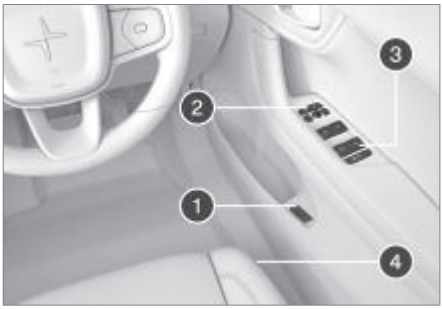
1. Front reading lamps and interior lighting
2. Display in roof console, SOS and CONNECT button

Centre and tunnel console



1. Centre display
2. Hazard warning flashers, defrosting, media
3. Gear selector
4. Parking brake

Driver's door



1. Memory for settings for power front seat
2. Central locking and door mirrors
3. Electric windows and child locks
4. Adjusting front seat

Related information

- Adjusting the power front seat (p. 214)
- Adjusting the steering wheel (p. 223)
- Lighting control (p. 178)
- Starting the car (p. 448)
- Driver display (p. 114)
- Overview of centre display (p. 146)
- Gear positions (p. 462)

Date and time

The clock is shown in the centre display, and it is also possible to change the date and time settings there.

Clock location

The clock is located at the top right of the centre display's status bar.

Date and time settings

1. Tap on at the top of the centre display.
2. Tap on and then System, then select Date and time.
3. Select the desired setting.

Automatic date and time setting

The date and time are set automatically by default. The time zone is adjusted automatically based on the location of the car.

Adjust the date, time and time zone manually by disabling the automatic date and time setting.

It is possible to select a 24 or 12-hour clock for both settings.

Related information

- Overview of centre display (p. 146)
- Centre display's views (p. 154)
- Car function view in the centre display (p. 157)
- Keyboard in centre display (p. 159)
- Messages in the centre display (p. 169)

Driver display

The driver display shows information about the car and driving.

The driver display contains gauges, indicators and indicator and warning symbols. The content of the driver display depends on the car's equipment, settings and which functions are active at that time.

The driver display is activated as soon as a door is opened. The driver display extinguishes after a while if it is not used but is reactivated if one of the doors is opened or the car is started.

Location in the driver display:

On the left	In the middle	On the right
Indicator and warning symbols	Temperature	Indicator and warning symbols
Speedometer	Messages, in some cases with graphics	Battery meter
Driving direction selected	Door and seatbelt information	Power meter
Cruise control and speed limiter information	Driver support functions	Trip meter
Odometer[A]	–	Distance to empty battery
–	–	App menu (activated via steering wheel keypad)

A Accumulated mileage.

Related information

- Driver display settings (p. 117)
- Indicator and warning symbols (p. 122)
- Cleaning the driver display (p. 675)
- Trip computer (p. 119)
- Resetting the trip meter (p. 120)
- Messages in the driver display (p. 145)

WARNING

- If the driver display should extinguish, not illuminate on activation/start or be fully or partially illegible, the car must not be used, contact Polestar Customer Support.

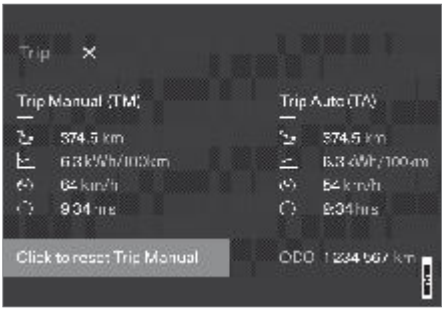
WARNING

- In the event of a fault in the driver display the information on e.g. brakes, airbags or other safety systems may not be shown. In which case, the driver cannot check the status of the car's systems or receive current warnings and information.

Driver display settings

Change display mode or set what should be shown in the driver display.

App menu



Overview of app menu.

Trip computer - Information on trip meter and odometer, among other things.

Managing the app menu

Right-hand keypad on the steering wheel.

1. Close menu/change display mode
2. Left/right
3. Up/down
4. Open menu/confirm

The app menu closes after a period of inactivity or after certain options have been selected.

Display modes

The driver display has two different display modes that are changed via the button on the right-hand side of the steering wheel.

- Calm - the middle section of the driver display is empty.
- Navigation - a map is shown of the entire driver display.

Settings in the centre display

Driver display settings are made via the centre display.

1. Press .
2. Press .
3. Select Screen.
4. Select Trip computer.
5. Change the settings you want.

These settings are personal and are saved to the active user profile.

Alternative speedometer

The alternative speedometer makes it easier to drive in countries where speed limit signs are in a different unit than normally shown in the car.

When the driver changes unit to show the speedometer graduated in km/h, for example, a smaller meter is shown digitally in mph above the standard meter, and vice versa.

Related information

- Driver display (p. 114)
- Messages in the driver display (p. 145)

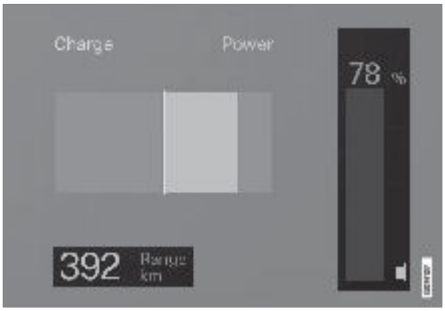
Battery meter

- Trip computer (p. 119)

NOTE

It is not possible to open the app menu while there is an unacknowledged message in the driver display. The message has to be confirmed first before the app menu can be opened.

The battery gauge shows the energy remaining and, together with the trip computer, calculates the approximate range.



Battery meter and calculated range in the driver display.

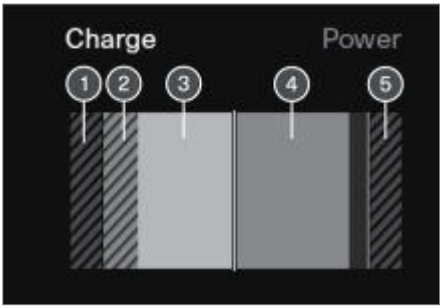
The battery gauge shows how much energy there is in the battery. The trip computer calculates approximate range for the energy left in the battery. Factors such as driving style and outside temperature can affect the estimated range.

Related information

- Driver display (p. 114)
- Regenerative braking (p. 460)
- Range (p. 469)
- Range assistant (p. 472)

Power meter

The power meter indicates when the car is being driven on electricity, when it is recovering energy to the battery, or when regeneration is limited.



Power meter location is to the right in the driver display.

1. Grey dashed – regeneration to the battery is limited.
2. Orange dashed – forceful braking counteracts the possibility of regeneration.
3. White – regeneration with the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal.
4. Orange – the car is consuming energy.
5. Dashed – the electrical drive system is limited.

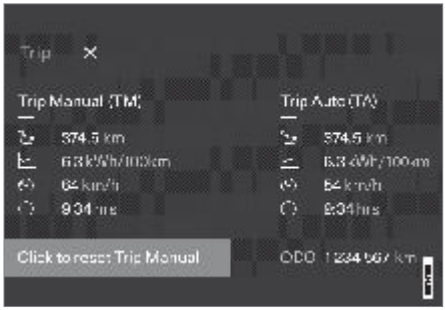
Related information

- Driver display (p. 114)
- Regenerative braking (p. 460)
- One Pedal Drive (p. 461)

Trip computer

The car's trip computer records values such as mileage, average consumption and average speed.

Information in the trip computer



Overview of trip computer in the driver display.


Mileage


Average consumption


Average speed


Driving time

Trip meter

There are two trip meters, TM and TA[6].

TM can be reset manually and TA is reset automatically if the car is not used for at least four hours.

Resetting the trip meter

Odometer

The odometer records the car's total mileage. This value cannot be reset to zero.

Trip computer settings

Trip computer settings are made via the centre display.

1. Press .
2. Press .
3. Select Screen.
4. Change the settings you want.

Related information

- Range (p. 469)
- Resetting the trip meter (p. 120)
- Journey statistics in the centre display (p. 121)
- Journey statistics in the centre display (p. 121)
- Driver display (p. 114)
- Changing system units (p. 162)

The trip meter can be reset to zero in the driver display or by using the left-hand stalk switch.

Reset all information in the trip meter to zero (mileage, average consumption, average speed and driving time).

Resetting to zero in the driver display

1. Press the O button on the steering wheel.
2. Press the O button again to initiate reset.
3. Click once more on the O button to confirm.
   > The trip meter is reset to zero.

Reset to zero using the stalk switch

– A long press on the RESET button on the stalk switch.
  > The trip meter is reset to zero.

Related information

- Trip computer (p. 119)

Journey statistics in the centre display

Make use of the journey statistics from the trip computer in order to provide an overview of the driving and to facilitate more economic driving.

The journey statistics are available via the Driver performance button in the app view.[7]

The journey statistics provide an overview of:

- Instant consumption
- Average consumption
- Trip time
- Average speed
- Trip distance

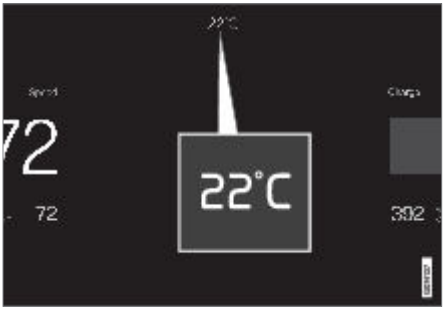
Related information

- Trip computer (p. 119)
- Range (p. 469)
- Economical driving (p. 471)

7 Trip statistics in the centre display are replaced by the Range assistant. The app available depends on the software version installed in the car.

Outside temperature gauge

The temperature outside of the car is shown in the driver display.



If the car has been stationary, the gauge may display a temperature reading that is too high.

When the temperature outside the car is between –5 °C (23 °F) and +2 °C (36 °F), a snowflake symbol illuminates to warn of icy conditions.

Change, for example, the unit for the temperature gauge via the settings in the centre display.

Related information

- Driver display (p. 114)
- Changing system units (p. 162)
- Driver display settings (p. 117)

Indicator and warning symbols

The indicator and warning systems alert the driver to the fact that a function is activated, a system is working, or a defect or serious error has occurred.

Red symbols

	Warning The red warning symbol illuminates when a fault has been detected, which could affect the safety or driveability of the car. An explanatory text is shown on the driver display at the same time. The warning symbol can also illuminate in conjunction with other symbols.
	Seatbelt reminder Illuminates or flashes when someone in the car has not buckled his/her seatbelt.
	Airbags A fault has been detected in one of the car's safety systems. Read the message in the driver display and contact Polestar Customer Support.
 A  B	Fault in brake system A fault has arisen in the brake system. Read the message in the driver display and contact Polestar Customer Support.

 A  B	Parking brake Constant glow: the parking brake is activated. Flashing: a fault has arisen with parking brake. Read the message in the driver display.
	Fault in the electrical system A fault has arisen in the electrical system. Contact Polestar Customer Support.
	Assistance at risk of collision Warns of a risk of collision with other vehicles, pedestrians, cyclists or large animals.
	Charging cable connected The charging cable is connected.
	System malfunction Fault in the drive system. Read the message in the driver display.

A Applies to Canada.
B Applies to the USA.

Amber symbols

	Information A problem has arisen in one of the car's systems. Read the message in the driver display. The information symbol can also illuminate in conjunction with other symbols.
 A  B	Fault in brake system A fault has arisen in the brake system. Read the message in the driver display.
 A  B	ABS fault The system is disengaged. The car's regular brake system continues to work, but without the ABS function.
	Rear fog lamp The rear fog lamp is switched on.

	Tyre pressure system Low tyre pressure. If there is a fault in the tyre pressure system, the symbol will flash for approx. 1 minute and then illuminate with a constant glow. This may be because the system cannot detect or warn of low tyre pressure as intended.
	Fault in the headlamp system A fault has arisen in the headlamp system. Read the message in the driver display.
	Lane assistance Lane assistance warns/intervenes.
	Reduced performance Low battery level. Read the message in the driver display. Reduced performance due to low battery level. Low range. Do you want to find a charging station?
	Stability system Constant glow: a fault has arisen in the system. Flashing: the system is working.
	Stability system, sport mode Sport mode is selected.
	Assistance at risk of collision System not available The system for assistance at risk of collision is not available, or is operating with reduced performance.

Blue symbols

	Active main beam Active main beam is switched on and illuminates.
	Main beam Main beam illuminates.

Green symbols

 	Left and right-hand direction indicator Direction indicator in use.
	Front fog lamps The front fog lamp is switched on.
	Position lamps The position lamps illuminate.

White/Grey symbols

	Active main beam Active main beam is switched on but does not illuminate.
	Braking when stationary Braking when stationary is activated.

 	Cold battery The battery has reduced capacity due to low temperature. The battery risks losing a lot of charge if the car is parked in cold ambient temperatures.
	Icy conditions The outside temperature is between –5 °C (23 °F) and +2 °C (36 °F), which may mean slippery driving conditions.
	Lane assistance White symbol: Lane assistance is activated and road lines are detected. Grey symbol: Lane assistance is activated and road lines are not detected.
	Rain sensor The rain sensor is activated.

Related information

- Driver display (p. 114)

License agreement for driver display

A license is an agreement for the right to operate a certain activity or the right to use someone else's entitlement according to the terms and conditions in the agreement. The following text is Polestar's agreement with the manufacturer or developer and is in English.

A license is an agreement for the right to operate a certain activity or the right to use someone else's entitlement according to the terms and conditions in the agreement. The following text is Polestar's agreement with the manufacturer or developer.

1.1 List of used Open Source Components

This table contains a list of open source software (OSS) components used within the product under the terms of the respective licenses. The source code corresponding to the open source components is also provided along with the product wherever mandated by the respective OSS license.

Sl No.	Name of OSS Component	Version of OSS Component	Name and Version of License (License text can be found in Appendix below)	Home Page	More Information
1	BidiReferenceCpp	26	Unicode Terms of Use	http://www.unicode.org/Public/PROGRAMS/BidiReferenceCpp/	(C) Socionext Embedded Software Austria GmbH (SESA) Copyright (C) 1999-2009, ASMUS, Inc
2	FASTCRC32		License of Stephan brumme/ Zlib style License	http://stephan-brumme.com/	Copyright © 2011-2013 Stephan Brumme. All rights reserved, Copyright (C) 1995-2006, 2010, 2011, 2012 Mark Adler
3	Freescale IMX6 HDMI		BSD 3-clause "New" or "Revised" License	https://www.nxp.com/	Copyright © 2009-2012, Freescale Semiconductor, Inc, Copyright © 2010-2012, Freescale Semiconductor, Inc.
4	FreeType Hashing		MIT License	https://sourceforge.net/p/canvasdraw/cd/642/tree/trunk/freetype/include/freetype/internal/fthash.h	Copyright 2000 Computing Research Labs, New Mexico State University Copyright 2001-2015 Francesco Zappa Nardelli

Sl No.	Name of OSS Component	Version of OSS Component	Name and Version of License (License text can be found in Appendix below)	Home Page	More Information
5	Freetype Project - BDF	1.16	MIT License	https://www.freetype.org/	Copyright (C) 2001, 2002 by Francesco Zappa Nardelli.
6	Freetype Project -PCF	24.16.8	MIT License	https://www.freetype.org/	Copyright 2000-2001, 2003 by Francesco Zappa Nardelli Copyright (C) 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2006, 2010 by Francesco Zappa Nardelli Copyright (C) 2000-2004, 2006-2011, 2013, 2014 by Francesco Zappa Nardelli Copyright 2000-2010, 2012-2014 by Francesco Zappa Nardelli Copyright 2003 by Francesco Zappa Nardelli
7	Freetype Project - Pcfutil		Open Group License	https://www.freetype.org/	Copyright 1990, 1994, 1998 The Open Group
8	HarfBuzz	1.3.1	MIT License	http://freedesktop.org/wiki/Software/HarfBuzz	Copyright © 2007 Chris Wilson Copyright © 2009,2010 Red Hat, Inc. Copyright © 2011,2012 Google, Inc.
9	Integrity Libnet		Internet Software Consortium-IBM License ISC License	https://github.com/lattera/glibc/blob/master/resolv/inet_pton.c	Copyright © 1996 by Internet Software Consortium. Consortium, Copyright © 1995 by International Business Machines, Inc.

Sl No.	Name of OSS Component	Version of OSS Component	Name and Version of License (License text can be found in Appendix below)	Home Page	More Information
10	Khronos EGL Headers	1.3	MIT License	http://www.khronos.org/registry/egl/	Copyright © 2007-2013 The Khronos Group Inc. Copyright 2008 VMware, Inc. Copyright © 2013-2014 The Khronos Group Inc.
11	Khronos Group - OpenGL ES	2.0	SGI Free Software License B v2.0	http://www.khronos.org/opengles/	
12	libjpeg	6b	Independent JPEG Group License	http://www.ijg.org/	Copyright (C) 1991-1997, Thomas G. Lane.
13	libpng	1.4.3	libpng License	http://github.com/coapp-packages/libpng/	Copyright © 1998-2010 Glenn Randers-Pehrson Copyright © 2007, 2009 Glenn Randers-Pehrson Version 0.96 Copyright © 1996, 1997 Andreas Dilger Version 0.88 Copyright © 1995, 1996 Guy Eric Schalnat, Group 42, Inc.
14	Libunibreak	2.1	zlib License	https://github.com/adah1972/libunibreak	Copyright (C) 2008-2011 Wu Yongwei Copyright (C) 2012 Tom Hacohen tom@stosb.com
15	lz4 Compression algorithm	NA	BSD 2-clause "Simplified" License	http://github.com/Cyan4973/lz4/	Copyright (C) 2011-2014, Yann Collet

Sl No.	Name of OSS Component	Version of OSS Component	Name and Version of License (License text can be found in Appendix below)	Home Page	More Information
16	md5	NA	Public Domain	https://doxygen.reactos.org/d7/d04/sdk_2lib_23rdparty_2freetype_2src_2base_2md5_8c_source.html	

Sl No.	Name of OSS Component	Version of OSS Component	Name and Version of License (License text can be found in Appendix below)	Home Page	More Information
17	NetBSD	1.5	HPND like license IBM License BSD-4-Clause (University of California-Specific) BSD 3-clause "New" or "Revised" License BSD One Clause License	http://www.netbsd.org/	Copyright © 1998 Manuel Bouyer Copyright © 1996 Matt Thomas., Copyright 1997 Marshall Kirk McKusick. All Rights Reserved, Copyright © 1985, 1988, 1989, 1991, 1993, 1995 The Regents of the University of California Copyright © 1989, 1993 The Regents of the University of California Copyright © 1983, 1993 The Regents of the University of California Copyright 2000-2011 Green Hills Software Copyright (c) 1996 by Internet Software Consortium. Copyright (C) 1998 WIDE Project, Portions Copyright © 1995 by International Business Machines, Inc, Copyright (C) 1994, 1995, 1997 TooLs GmbH Copyright (C) 1994, 1995, 1997 Wolfgang Solfrank Copyright © 1995, 1999 Berkeley Software Design, Inc Portions Copyright © 1993 by Digital Equipment Corporation Copyright © 1992 Henry Spencer Copyright © 1997, 1998,

Sl No.	Name of OSS Component	Version of OSS Component	Name and Version of License (License text can be found in Appendix below)	Home Page	More Information
					1999 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc Copyright © 1994 James A. Jegers
18	NetBSD_BSD4	NA	BSD 4-clause "Original" or "Old" License	http://www.netbsd.org/	Copyright 2000-2011 Green Hills Software Copyright © 1994, 1998 Christopher G. Demetriou

Sl No.	Name of OSS Component	Version of OSS Component	Name and Version of License (License text can be found in Appendix below)	Home Page	More Information
19	The FreeType Project - freetype2	2.6.3	Freetype Project License	http://sourceforge.net/projects/freetype/	Copyright 2013-2016 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg, Copyright 2007-2016 by Rahul Bhalerao rahul.bhalerao@redhat.com b.rahul.pm@gmail.com Copyright 2009-2016 by Oran Agra and Mickey Gabel, Copyright 2008-2016 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, Werner Lemberg, and suzuki toshiya. , Copyright 2000 Computing Research Labs, New Mexico State University, Copyright 2001-2015 Francesco Zappa Nardelli, Copyright 2004-2016 by Masatake YAMATO and Redhat K.K, Copyright 2007-2016 by Derek Clegg and Michael Toftdal, Copyright 2010-2016 by Joel Klinghed, Copyright 2007-2013 Adobe Systems Incorporated, Copyright 2007-2014 Adobe Systems Incorporated, Copyright 2004-2016 by Albert

Sl No.	Name of OSS Component	Version of OSS Component	Name and Version of License (License text can be found in Appendix below)	Home Page	More Information
					Chin-A-Young, Copyright 2013-2016 by Google, Inc, Copyright 2002-2016 by Roberto Alameda, Copyright 2003 Huw D M Davies for Codeweavers, Copyright 2007 Dmitry Timoshkov for Codeweavers
20	Vivante Driver software	NA	MIT License	http://www.vivantecorp.com/	Copyright 2012 - 2016 Vivante Corporation, Santa Clara, California Copyright © 2007 The Khronos Group Inc Copyright © 2014 - 2016 Vivante Corporation Copyright 2012 Vivante Corporation, Sunnyvale, California Copyright © 2011 Intel Corporation Copyright (C) 1999-2001 Brian Paul
21	zlib	1.2.8	zlib License	zlib License	Copyright (C) 1995-2007 Mark Adler Copyright (C) 1995-2005 Jean-loup Gailly Copyright (C) 1995-2010 Mark Adler Copyright (C) 2003 Chris Anderson Copyright (C) 1998 Brian Raiter
22	RBTree.cpp	NA	Public Domain	http://eternallyconfuzzled.com/tuts/datastructures/jsw_tut_rbtree.aspx	(C) Socionext Embedded Software Austria GmbH (SESA)

2. APPENDIX - LICENSE TEXT

2.1 HPND Like license

Portions Copyright (c) 1993 by Digital Equipment Corporation.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies, and that the name of Digital Equipment Corporation not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the document or software without specific, written prior permission.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORP. DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORPORATION BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

2.2 BSD 2-clause "Simplified" License

BSD Two Clause License

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

2.3 IBM License

Portions Copyright (c) 1995 by International Business Machines, Inc.

International Business Machines, Inc. (hereinafter called IBM) grants permission under its copyrights to use, copy, modify, and distribute this Software with or without fee, provided that the above copyright notice and all paragraphs of this notice appear in all copies, and that the name of IBM not be used in connection with the marketing of any product incorporating the Software or modifications thereof, without specific, written prior permission.

To the extent it has a right to do so, IBM grants an immunity from suit under its patents, if any, for the use, sale or manufacture of products to the extent that such products are used for performing Domain Name System dynamic updates in TCP/IP networks by means of the Software. No immunity is granted for any product per se or for any other function of any product.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", AND IBM DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL IBM BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY

DAMAGES WHATSOEVER ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF IBM IS APPRISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

2.4 BSD 3-clause "New" or "Revised" License

Copyright/Copyright holders – see List of Open Source Components

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. Neither the name of the [ORGANIZATION] nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

2.5 BSD 4-clause "Original" or "Old" License

Copyright/Copyright holders – see List of Open Source Components

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by the organization.
4. Neither the name of the organization nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY COPYRIGHT HOLDER "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL {{COPYRIGHT HOLDER}} BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CON-

TRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

2.6 BSD-4-Clause (University of California-Specific)

BSD-4-Clause (University of California-Specific)

Copyright/Copyright holders – see List of Open Source Components

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.
4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS ` ` AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

2.7 Freetype Project License

The FreeType Project LICENSE

2006-Jan-27

Copyright 1996-2002, 2006 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg

Introduction

The FreeType Project is distributed in several archive packages; some of them may contain, in addition to the FreeType font engine, various tools and contributions which rely on, or relate to, the FreeType Project. This license applies to all files found in such packages, and which do not fall under their own explicit license. The license affects thus the FreeType font engine, the test programs, documentation and makefiles, at the very least. This license was inspired by the BSD, Artistic, and IJG (Independent JPEG Group) licenses, which all encourage inclusion and use of free software in commercial and freeware products alike. As a consequence, its main points are that:

We don't promise that this software works. However, we will be interested in any kind of bug reports. (` as is' distribution)

You can use this software for whatever you want, in parts or full form, without having to pay us. (` royalty-free' usage)

You may not pretend that you wrote this software. If you use it, or only parts of it, in a program, you must acknowledge somewhere in

your documentation that you have used the FreeType code. (` credits')

We specifically permit and encourage the inclusion of this software, with or without modifications, in commercial products. We disclaim all warranties covering The FreeType Project and assume no liability related to The FreeType Project. Finally, many people asked us for a preferred form for a credit/disclaimer to use in compliance with this license. We thus encourage you to use the following text: "Portions of this software are copyright © 1996-2002, 2006 The FreeType Project (www.freetype.org). All rights reserved."

"Portions of this software are copyright © 1996-2002, 2006 The FreeType Project (www.freetype.org). All rights reserved."

Definitions

Throughout this license, the terms ` package', ` FreeType Project', and ` FreeType archive' refer to the set of files originally distributed by the authors (David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg) as the ` FreeType Project', be they named as alpha, beta or final release. ` You' refers to the licensee, or person using the project, where ` using' is a generic term including compiling the project's source code as well as linking it to form a ` program' or ` executable'. This program is referred to as ` a program using the FreeType engine'. This license applies to all files distributed in the original FreeType Project, including all source code, binaries and documentation, unless otherwise stated in the file in its original, unmodified form as distributed in the original archive. If you are unsure whether or not a particular file is covered by this license, you must contact us to verify this.

Throughout this license, the terms ` package', ` FreeType Project', and ` FreeType archive' refer to the set of files originally distributed by the authors (David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg) as the ` FreeType Project', be they named as alpha, beta or final release. ` You' refers to the licensee, or person using the project, where ` using' is a generic term including compiling the project's source code as well as linking it to form a ` program' or ` executable'. This program is referred to as ` a program using the FreeType engine'. This license applies to all files distributed in the original FreeType Project, including all source code, binaries and documentation, unless otherwise stated in the file in its original, unmodified form as distributed in the original archive. If you are unsure whether or not a particular file is covered by this license, you must contact us to verify this.

No Warranty

THE FREETYPE PROJECT IS PROVIDED ` AS IS' WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT WILL ANY OF THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES CAUSED BY THE USE OR THE INABILITY TO USE, OF THE FREETYPE PROJECT. Redistribution

Redistribution

This license grants a worldwide, royalty-free, perpetual and irrevocable right and license to use, execute, perform, compile, display, copy, create derivative works of, distribute and sublicense the FreeType Project (in both source and object code forms) and derivative works thereof for any purpose; and to authorize others to exercise some or all of the rights granted herein, subject to the following conditions:

Redistribution of source code must retain this license file (` FTL.TXT') unaltered; any additions, deletions or changes to the original files must be clearly indicated in accompanying documentation. The copyright notices of the unaltered, original files must be preserved in all copies of source files. Redistribution in binary form must provide a disclaimer that states that the software is based in part of the work of the FreeType Team, in the distribution documentation. We also encourage you to put an URL to the FreeType web page in your documentation, though this isn't mandatory. These conditions

apply to any software derived from or based on the FreeType Project, not just the unmodified files. If you use our work, you must acknowledge us. However, no fee need be paid to us.

Advertising

Neither the FreeType authors and contributors nor you shall use the name of the other for commercial, advertising, or promotional purposes without specific prior written permission. We suggest, but do not require, that you use one or more of the following phrases to refer to this software in your documentation or advertising materials: ` FreeType Project', ` FreeType Engine', ` FreeType library', or ` FreeType Distribution'. As you have not signed this license, you are not required to accept it. However, as the FreeType Project is copyrighted material, only this license, or another one contracted with the authors, grants you the right to use, distribute, and modify it. Therefore, by using, distributing, or modifying the FreeType Project, you indicate that you understand and accept all the terms of this license.

Contacts

There are two mailing lists related to FreeType:

freetype@nongnu.org

Discusses general use and applications of FreeType, as well as future and wanted additions to the library and distribution. If you are looking for support, start in this list if you haven't found anything to help you in the documentation.

devel@nongnu.org

Discusses bugs, as well as engine internals, design issues, specific licenses, porting, etc.

Our home page can be found at: http://www.freetype.org

2.8 Independent JPEG Group License

The Independent JPEG Group's JPEG software README for release 6b of 27-Mar-1998

This distribution contains the sixth public release of the Independent JPEG Group's free JPEG software. You are welcome to redistribute this software and to use it for any purpose, subject to the conditions under LEGAL ISSUES, below. Serious users of this software (particularly those incorporating it into larger programs) should contact IJG at jpeg-info@uunet.uu.net to be added to our electronic mailing list. Mailing list members are notified of updates and have a chance to participate in technical discussions, etc. This software is the work of Tom Lane, Philip Gladstone, Jim Boucher, Lee Crocker, Julian Minguillon, Luis Ortiz, George Phillips, Davide Rossi, Guido Vollbeding, Ge' Weijers, and other members of the Independent JPEG Group. IJG is not affiliated with the official ISO JPEG standards committee.

LEGAL ISSUES

In plain English:

We don't promise that this software works. (But if you find any bugs, please let us know!) You can use this software for whatever you want. You don't have to pay us. You may not pretend that you wrote this software. If you use it in a program, you must acknowledge somewhere in your documentation that you've used the IJG code. In legalese:

The authors make NO WARRANTY or representation, either express or implied, with respect to this software, its quality, accuracy, merchantability, or fitness for a particular purpose. This software is provided "AS IS", and you, its user, assume the entire risk as to its quality and accuracy. This software is copyright (C) 1991-1998, Thomas G. Lane. All Rights Reserved except as specified below.

Permission is hereby granted to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software (or portions thereof) for any purpose, without fee, subject to these conditions:

1. If any part of the source code for this software is distributed, then this README file must be included, with this copyright and no-warranty notice unaltered; and any additions, deletions,

or changes to the original files must be clearly indicated in accompanying documentation.

2. If only executable code is distributed, then the accompanying documentation must state that "this software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group".
3. Permission for use of this software is granted only if the user accepts full responsibility for any undesirable consequences; the authors accept NO LIABILITY for damages of any kind.

These conditions apply to any software derived from or based on the IJG code, not just to the unmodified library. If you use our work, you ought to acknowledge us.

Permission is NOT granted for the use of any IJG author's name or company name in advertising or publicity relating to this software or products derived from it. This software may be referred to only as "the Independent JPEG Group's software".

We specifically permit and encourage the use of this software as the basis of commercial products, provided that all warranty or liability claims are assumed by the product vendor. ansi2knr.c is included in this distribution by permission of L. Peter Deutsch, sole proprietor of its copyright holder, Aladdin Enterprises of Menlo Park, CA. ansi2knr.c is NOT covered by the above copyright and conditions, but instead by the usual distribution terms of the Free Software Foundation; principally, that you must include source code if you redistribute it. (See the file ansi2knr.c for full details.)

However, since ansi2knr.c is not needed as part of any program generated from the IJG code, this does not limit you more than the foregoing paragraphs do. The Unix configuration script "configure" was produced with GNU Autoconf. It is copyright by the Free Software Foundation but is freely distributable. The same holds for its supporting scripts (config.guess, config.sub, ltconfig, ltmain.sh). Another support script, install-sh, is copyright by M.I.T. but is also freely distributable.

It appears that the arithmetic coding option of the JPEG spec is covered by patents owned by IBM, AT&T, and Mitsubishi. Hence arithmetic coding cannot legally be used without obtaining one or more licenses. For this reason, support for arithmetic coding has been removed from the free JPEG software. (Since arithmetic coding provides only a marginal gain over the unpatented Huffman mode, it is unlikely that very many implementations will support it.) So far as we are aware, there are no patent restrictions on the remaining code.

The IJG distribution formerly included code to read and write GIF files. To avoid entanglement with the Unisys LZW patent, GIF reading support has been removed altogether, and the GIF writer has been simplified to produce "uncompressed GIFs". This technique does not use the LZW algorithm; the resulting GIF files are larger than usual, but are readable by all standard GIF decoders. We are required to state that:

"The Graphics Interchange Format(c) is the Copyright property of CompuServe Incorporated. GIF(sm) is a Service Mark property of CompuServe Incorporated."

2.9 Internet Software Consortium-IBM License

Copyright (c) 1996 by Internet Software Consortium.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND INTERNET SOFTWARE CONSORTIUM DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL INTERNET SOFTWARE CONSORTIUM BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR

OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

Portions Copyright (c) 1995 by International Business Machines, Inc.

International Business Machines, Inc. (hereinafter called IBM) grants permission under its copyrights to use, copy, modify, and distribute this Software with or without fee, provided that the above copyright notice and all paragraphs of this notice appear in all copies, and that the name of IBM not be used in connection with the marketing of any product incorporating the Software or modifications thereof, without specific, written prior permission.

To the extent it has a right to do so, IBM grants an immunity from suit under its patents, if any, for the use, sale or manufacture of products to the extent that such products are used for performing Domain Name System dynamic updates in TCP/IP networks by means of the Software. No immunity is granted for any product per se or for any other function of any product.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", AND IBM DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL IBM BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF IBM IS APPRISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

2.10 Khronos License

Copyright (c) 2013 The Khronos Group Inc.

** ** Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a ** copy of this software and/or associated documentation files (the ** "Materials"), to deal in the Materials without restriction, including ** without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, ** distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Materials, and to ** permit persons to whom the Materials are furnished to do so, subject to ** the following conditions: ** ** The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included ** in all copies or substantial portions of the Materials. **

** THE MATERIALS ARE PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, ** EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF ** MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. ** IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY ** CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, ** TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE ** MATERIALS OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE MATERIALS.

2.11 License of Stephan Brumme/ Zlib style License

This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the author be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software. Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions: The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.

2.12 MIT License

The MIT License

Copyright/Copyright holders – see List of Open Source Components

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

2.13 Open Group License

Copyright 1996, 1998 The Open Group.

Permission to use, copy, modify, distribute, and sell this software and its documentation for any purpose is hereby granted without fee, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation. The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OPEN GROUP BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of The Open Group shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from The Open Group.

2.14 Public Domain

Public domain code is not subject to any license.

2.15 BSD One Clause License

BSD One Clause License

Copyright/Copyright holders – see List of Open Source Components

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE)

ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

2.16 ISC License

ISC License (ISCL)

Copyright/Copyright holders – see List of Open Source Components

Permission to use, copy, modify, and/or distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND THE AUTHOR DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

2.17 SGI Free Software License B v2.0

ISC License (ISCL)

Copyright/Copyright holders – see List of Open Source Components

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice including the dates of first publication and either this permission notice or a reference to http://oss.sgi.com/projects/FreeB/ shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND THE AUTHOR DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of Silicon Graphics, Inc. shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from Silicon Graphics, Inc.

2.18 Unicode Terms of Use

For the general privacy policy governing access to this site, see the Unicode Privacy Policy. For trademark usage, see the Unicode ® Consortium Name and Trademark Usage Policy.

A. Unicode Copyright.

1. Copyright © 1991-2014 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved.
2. Certain documents and files on this website contain a legend indicating that "Modification is permitted." Any person is hereby authorized, without fee, to modify such documents and files to create derivative works conforming to the Unicode ® Standard, subject to Terms and Conditions herein.
3. Any person is hereby authorized, without fee, to view, use, reproduce, and distribute all documents and files solely for informational purposes in the creation of products supporting the Unicode Standard, subject to the Terms and Conditions herein.

4. Further specifications of rights and restrictions pertaining to the use of the particular set of data files known as the "Unicode Character Database" can be found in Exhibit 1.
5. Each version of the Unicode Standard has further specifications of rights and restrictions of use. For the book editions (Unicode 5.0 and earlier), these are found on the back of the title page. The online code charts carry specific restrictions. All other files, including online documentation of the core specification for Unicode 6.0 and later, are covered under these general Terms of Use.
6. No license is granted to "mirror" the Unicode website where a fee is charged for access to the "mirror" site.
7. Modification is not permitted with respect to this document. All copies of this document must be verbatim.

B. Restricted Rights Legend.

Any technical data or software which is licensed to the United States of America, its agencies and/or instrumentalities under this Agreement is commercial technical data or commercial computer software developed exclusively at private expense as defined in FAR 2.101, or DFARS 252.227-7014 (June 1995), as applicable. For technical data, use, duplication, or disclosure by the Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in DFARS 202.227-7015 Technical Data, Commercial and Items (Nov 1995) and this Agreement. For Software, in accordance with FAR 12-212 or DFARS 227-7202, as applicable, use, duplication or disclosure by the Government is subject to the restrictions set forth in this Agreement.

C. Warranties and Disclaimers.

1. This publication and/or website may include technical or typographical errors or other inaccuracies . Changes are periodically added to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication and/or website. Unicode may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or program(s) described in this publication and/or website at any time.
2. If this file has been purchased on magnetic or optical media from Unicode, Inc. the sole and exclusive remedy for any claim will be exchange of the defective media within ninety (90) days of original purchase.
3. EXCEPT AS PROVIDED IN SECTION C.2, THIS PUBLICATION AND/OR SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED, OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ANY WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. UNICODE AND ITS LICENSORS ASSUME NO RESPONSIBILITY FOR ERRORS OR OMISSIONS IN THIS PUBLICATION AND/OR SOFTWARE OR OTHER DOCUMENTS WHICH ARE REFERENCED BY OR LINKED TO THIS PUBLICATION OR THE UNICODE WEBSITE.

D. Waiver of Damages.

In no event shall Unicode or its licensors be liable for any special, incidental, indirect or consequential damages of any kind, or any damages whatsoever, whether or not Unicode was advised of the possibility of the damage, including, without limitation, those resulting from the following: loss of use, data or profits, in connection with the use, modification or distribution of this information or its derivatives.

E. Trademarks & Logos.

1. The Unicode Word Mark and the Unicode Logo are trademarks of Unicode, Inc. "The Unicode Consortium" and "Unicode, Inc." are trade names of Unicode, Inc. Use of the information and materials found on this website indicates your acknowledgement of Unicode, Inc.'s exclusive worldwide rights in the Unicode Word Mark, the Unicode Logo, and the Unicode trade names.
2. The Unicode Consortium Name and Trademark Usage Policy ("Trademark Policy") are incorporated herein by reference and you

agree to abide by the provisions of the Trademark Policy, which may be changed from time to time in the sole discretion of Unicode, Inc.

3. All third party trademarks referenced herein are the property of their respective owners.

F. Miscellaneous.

1. Jurisdiction and Venue. This server is operated from a location in the State of California, United States of America. Unicode makes no representation that the materials are appropriate for use in other locations. If you access this server from other locations, you are responsible for compliance with local laws. This Agreement, all use of this site and any claims and damages resulting from use of this site are governed solely by the laws of the State of California without regard to any principles which would apply the laws of a different jurisdiction. The user agrees that any disputes regarding this site shall be resolved solely in the courts located in Santa Clara County, California. The user agrees said courts have personal jurisdiction and agree to waive any right to transfer the dispute to any other forum.
2. Modification by Unicode. Unicode shall have the right to modify this Agreement at any time by posting it to this site. The user may not assign any part of this Agreement without Unicode's prior written consent.
3. Taxes. The user agrees to pay any taxes arising from access to this website or use of the information herein, except for those based on Unicode's net income.
4. Severability. If any provision of this Agreement is declared invalid or unenforceable, the remaining provisions of this Agreement shall remain in effect.
5. Entire Agreement. This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between the parties.

2.19 libpng License

This copy of the libpng notices is provided for your convenience. In case of any discrepancy between this copy and the notices in the file png.h that is included in the libpng distribution, the latter shall prevail.

COPYRIGHT NOTICE, DISCLAIMER, and LICENSE:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

If you modify libpng you may insert additional notices immediately following this sentence. libpng versions 1.0.7, July 1, 2000, through 1.0.13, April 15, 2002, are Copyright (c) 2000-2002 Glenn Randers-Pehrson and are distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-1.0.6 with the following individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors:

Simon-Pierre Cadieux, Eric S. Raymond, Gilles Vollant

and with the following additions to the disclaimer:

There is no warranty against interference with your enjoyment of the library or against infringement. There is no warranty that our efforts or the library will fulfill any of your particular purposes or needs. This library is provided with all faults, and the entire risk of satisfactory quality, performance, accuracy, and effort is with the user.

libpng versions 0.97, January 1998, through 1.0.6, March 20, 2000, are Copyright (c) 1998, 1999 Glenn Randers-Pehrson, and are distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-0.96, with the following individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors:

Tom Lane, Glenn Randers-Pehrson, Willem van Schaik.

libpng versions 0.89, June 1996, through 0.96, May 1997, are Copyright (c) 1996, 1997 Andreas Dilger Distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-0.88, with the fol-

lowing individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors:

John Bowler, Kevin Bracey, Sam Bushe, Magnus Holmgren, Greg Roelofs, Tom Tanner.

libpng versions 0.5, May 1995, through 0.88, January 1996, are Copyright (c) 1995, 1996 Guy Eric Schalnat, Group 42, Inc. For the purposes of this copyright and license, "Contributing Authors" is defined as the following set of individuals:

Andreas Dilger, Dave Martindale, Guy Eric Schalnat, Paul Schmidt, Tim Wegner.

The PNG Reference Library is supplied "AS IS". The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. disclaim all warranties, expressed or implied, including, without limitation, the warranties of merchantability and of fitness for any purpose. The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. assume no liability for direct, indirect, incidental, special, exemplary, or consequential damages, which may result from the use of the PNG Reference Library, even if advised of the possibility of such damage. Permission is hereby granted to use, copy, modify, and distribute this source code, or portions hereof, for any purpose, without fee, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this source code must not be misrepresented.
2. Altered versions must be plainly marked as such and must not be misrepresented as being the original source.
3. This Copyright notice may not be removed or altered from any source or altered source distribution.

The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. specifically permit, without fee, and encourage the use of this source code as a component to supporting the PNG file format in commercial products. If you use this source code in a product, acknowledgment is not required but would be appreciated. A "png_get_copyright" function is available, for convenient use in "about" boxes and the like:

printf("%s",png_get_copyright(NULL));

Also, the PNG logo (in PNG format, of course) is supplied in the files "pngbar.png" and "pngbar.jpg (88x31) and "pngnow.png" (98x31).

Libpng is OSI Certified Open Source Software. OSI Certified Open Source is a certification mark of the Open Source Initiative.

Glenn Randers-Pehrson

randeg@alum.rpi.edu

April 15, 2002

2.20 zlib License

Copyright/Copyright holders – see List of Open Source Components

This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

Related information

- Driver display (p. 114)

Messages in the driver display

The driver display can show messages to inform or assist the driver in the event of different events.

Examples of messages in the driver display.

Messages are shown in the middle of the driver display. The composition may vary and is shown together with graphics, symbols or buttons for acknowledging the message or accepting a request, for example.

Managing messages

Right-hand keypad on the steering wheel.

1. Left/right
2. Confirm

The message disappears from the driver display when it has been acknowledged/acted on. Certain selected messages can be seen in the notification view of the centre display.

Service messages

Shown below is a selection of service messages and their meanings.

Message	Specification
Do not drive[A]	Stop and contact Polestar Customer Support. Serious risk of injury.
Book time for regular maintenance	Time for service – contact Polestar Customer Support[A]. Shown before the next service date.
Time for regular maintenance	Time for service – contact Polestar Customer Support[A]. Shown at the next service date.
Regular maintenance overdue	Time for service – contact Polestar Customer Support[A]. Shown when the service date has passed.

A Part of message, shown together with information on where the problem has arisen.

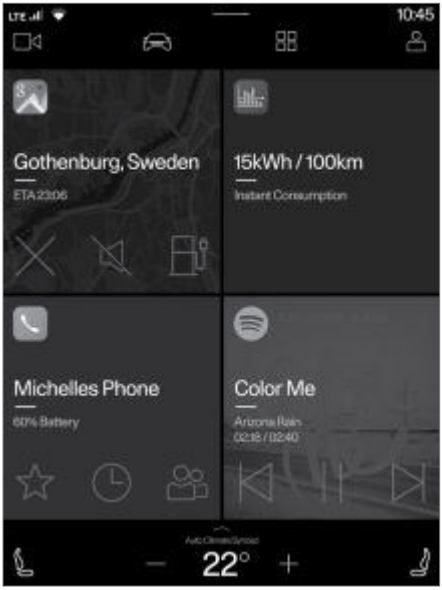
Related information

- Driver display (p. 114)
- Driver display settings (p. 117)
- Messages in the centre display (p. 169)

Overview of centre display

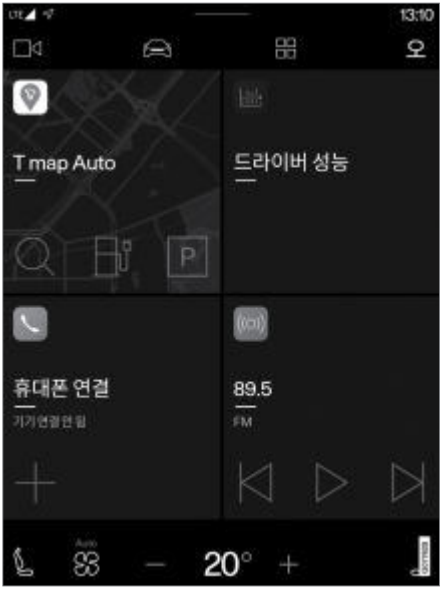
Many of the car's functions are controlled from the centre display. Presented here is the centre display and its options.

Home view



Home view is the first view shown when the screen is started.

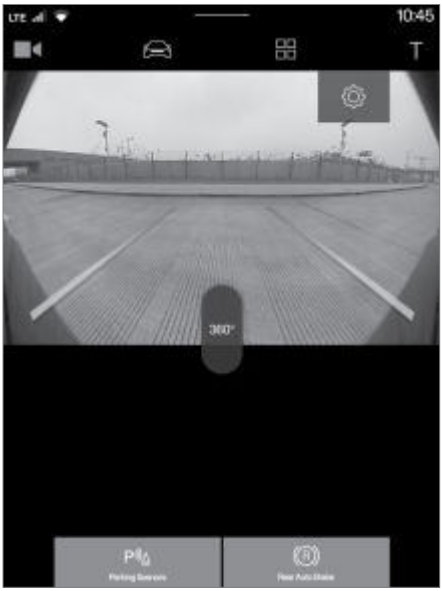
Home view is the first view shown when the screen is started.



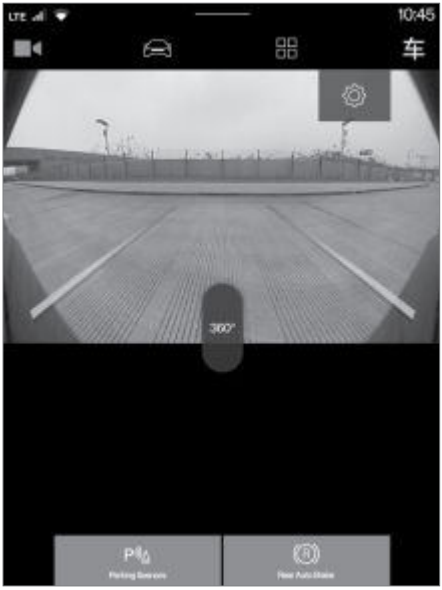
Home view is the first view shown when the screen is started.

The home view consists of four tiles that show the last used apps. The different views in the centre display such as climate view, camera view, car function view, app view and user profiles can also be reached from the home view.

Camera view

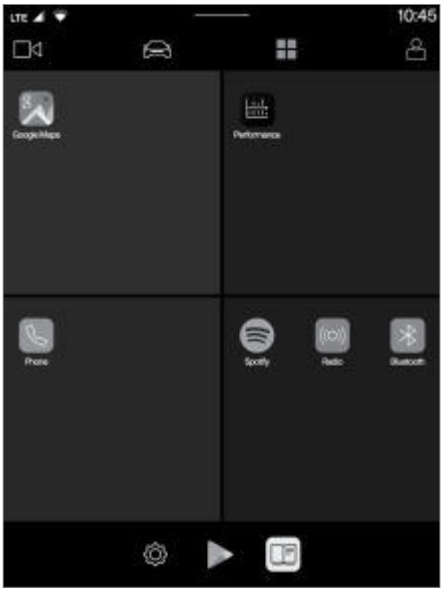


Camera view shows the park assist cameras (PAC[8]), which displays a composite 360° view and separate views for each of the four cameras: rear, front, left or right camera view.



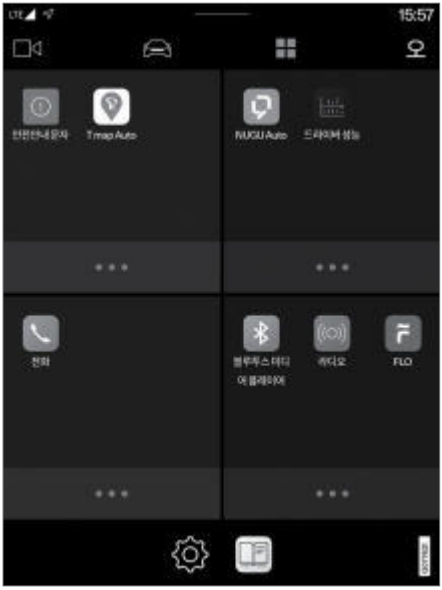
Camera view shows the park assist cameras (PAC[9]), which displays a composite 360° view and separate views for each of the four cameras: rear, front, left or right camera view.

App view



The view for apps that have been downloaded (third-party apps) or for the car's built-in functions.

The view for apps that have been downloaded (third-party apps) or for the car's built-in functions.



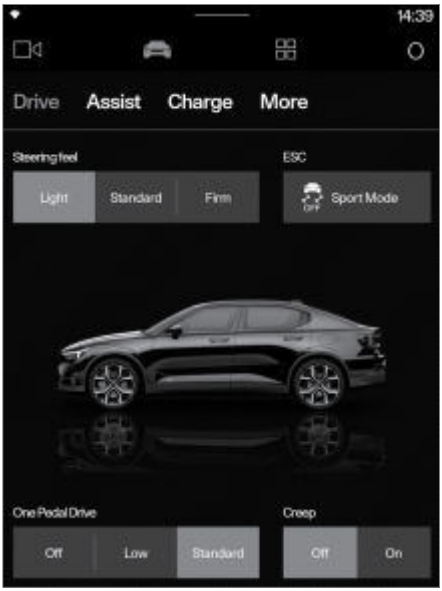
The view for apps that have been downloaded (third-party apps) or for the car's built-in functions.

User profiles

Many of the settings made in the car can be adapted according to the user's personal preferences and can be saved in different user profiles.

Many of the settings made in the car can be adapted according to the user's personal preferences and can be saved in different user profiles.

Car functions



View showing car functions.

View showing car functions.

Related information

- Managing the centre display (p. 153)
- Centre display's views (p. 154)
- Moving apps in centre display (p. 158)
- Apps (p. 511)
- Symbols in the centre display's status bar (p. 158)
- T map AUTO (p. 564)
- Amap Auto (p. 565)
- Google Maps (p. 566)
- Bluetooth Media Player (p. 520)
- Phone (p. 523)
- Climate controls (p. 235)
- Sound settings (p. 511)
- Changing system language (p. 162)

- Changing system units (p. 162)
- Cleaning the centre display (p. 674)
- Messages in the centre display (p. 169)
- Charging in the car's centre display (p. 432)

NOTE

If necessary, the climate control can be used to cool down the media system in the centre display. In these cases, the message Cooling infotainment system is shown in the driver display.

Managing the centre display

Many of the car's functions are controlled and regulated from the centre display. The centre display is a touch screen that reacts to touch.

Using the touch screen functionality in the centre display

The screen reacts differently depending on whether you press, drag or swipe across it. Actions such as browsing between different views, marking objects, scrolling in a list and moving apps can be performed by touching the screen in different ways.

The centre display is a capacitive touchscreen.

Two people can interact with the screen at the same time, e.g. to adjust the climate for the driver and passenger side respectively.

Returning to home view from another view

– Briefly press the home button below the centre display.
  > The last position of the home view is shown.

Using the controls in the centre display

The control is used for many of the car's functions. Regulate e.g. temperature by means of one of the following:

- drag the control to the desired temperature
- tap on + or – in order to raise or lower the temperature gradually
- tap on the desired temperature on the control.

Related information

- Moving apps in centre display (p. 158)
- Keyboard in centre display (p. 159)
- Cleaning the centre display (p. 674)

IMPORTANT

Do not use sharp objects on the screen as they may scratch it.

NOTE

Wearing gloves may restrict or impede touchscreen response.

Centre display's views

The centre display is started automatically when the driver's door is opened.

Home view

Home view is the view that is shown when the screen is started. It is made up of four subviews.

It is possible to make your own choices on which apps are to be shown in subviews in home view. An app selected from the app view starts in the relevant subview in the home view.

The subviews are dynamic and show the last apps used, e.g. navigation, media or phone. Tap on the desired app to expand it, or swipe downwards on the tile to view more apps.

Status field

The activities in the car are shown at the top of the screen. Among other things, the status field shows other network and connection information, as well as the time.

Notification view

The car's notifications are collected together at the top of the screen.

Drag the tab down in order to access the notification view. Missed calls or information relating to the car, for example, are shown here.

Exit the notification view by tapping outside of notifications, on the home button, or by swiping upwards. The underlying view is then visible and available for use again.

Climate view

The climate row is available at the bottom of the screen. The most common climate settings can be made directly there, such as setting temperature and seat heating.

Sweep up on the climate row to open the climate view with more setting options.

Swipe down on the climate view or press the home button to close the climate view.

Camera view

The camera view starts automatically when gear position R is used.

Camera view shows the park assist cameras (PAC[10]), which displays a composite 360° view and separate views for each of the four cameras: rear, front, left or right camera view.

The camera view is closed automatically when the car is driving at a certain speed or by tapping on .

App view

Tap on at the top of the centre display.

Apps that have been downloaded, both third-party apps and apps for embedded functions.

Tap on an app to open it in full screen mode.

Go back to the home view by tapping on .

Car functions

Tap on to access car functions from the home view. From here it is possible to manage settings and activate or deactivate different functions.

- Drive – settings for steering and brakes, for example.
- Assist – activate or deactivate various driver support functions.
- Charge – activated automatically when charging. Option to set the amperage and timer and unlock the charging cable. Shows charging stations and saved locations.
- More – Settings that apply to wireless phone charger, exterior and interior lighting, mirrors, seats, locking, as well as wiper blades. Information on car status and servicing can also be found here.

10 Park Assist Camera

Go back to the home view by tapping on .

User profiles

Tap on the initials or the symbol at the top of the centre display to access user profiles from the home view.

Many of the settings made in the car can be adapted according to the user's personal preferences and can be saved in different user profiles.

Settings that can be saved in a user profile include, amongst other things, screens, mirrors, front seats, navigation, audio and media system, language and voice control.

Go back to the home view by tapping on the initials or the symbol.

Related information

- Managing subviews in centre display (p. 156)
- Symbols in the centre display's status bar (p. 158)
- Resetting user data (p. 163)
- User profiles (p. 163)
- Climate controls (p. 235)
- Apps (p. 511)
- Car function view in the centre display (p. 157)
- Overview of centre display (p. 146)
- Charging in the car's centre display (p. 432)
- Moving apps in centre display (p. 158)

NOTE

When the car is moving:

- Certain applications (e.g. the Manual) may be deactivated.
- Certain texts (e.g. texts generated by apps) will be shortened.

Managing subviews in centre display

The centre display's home view and app view include subviews that can be expanded.

Expanding an app in home view

Expanding an app:

– Tap on the desired app. When an app is opened, the other apps are temporarily suppressed.

  An open app gives access to its basic functions.

Closing an app:

– Briefly press the physical home button below the centre display.

Expanding a tile in app view

Expanding a subview:

– Press •••

  > The tile is expanded and provides access to additional apps.

Closing an expanded subview:

– The subview can be closed in two ways:

  • Press ✕

  • Briefly tap on the home button in the bottom of the centre display.

Home button for the centre display.

There is always the option to go back to home view by pressing the home button.

Related information

- Managing the centre display (p. 153)
- Centre display's views (p. 154)

Car function view in the centre display

In car function view, all settings and buttons are collected under the various subviews. Navigate to car function view from home view by tapping on .

Tap on the desired heading to toggle between subviews in car function view. For further functions, tap on More.

Different types of buttons

There are different types of buttons for car functions, see below:

Type of button	Property	Affects car function
Selection buttons	Selection of function mode.	Selection buttons are available in car function view and charging view, for example.
Function buttons	Have on/off positions.	Most buttons in function view are function buttons.

Various button modes and functions

Press the button briefly to activate or deactivate the function.

The function is activated when the entire function or selection button lights up. The function is deactivated when the button is extinguished.

When a function is activated, extra text with an explanation for certain functions is shown. The text is displayed for a few seconds, then the button lights up.

Some functions have further settings. Tap on ••• to access these.

Related information

- Managing the centre display (p. 153)
- Centre display's views (p. 154)

Moving apps in centre display

App view is made up of four subviews where the apps can be moved and organised as preferred, and you can expand a subview for access to apps other than just the ones displayed.

New apps installed are placed in app view.

Moving apps in the centre display:

1. Tap on  at the top of the centre display.
2. Tap on an app and hold it down.
   > It is then possible to move it.
3. Drag the app to the preferred place in the app view.

Swipe across the screen to scroll up or down in the view.

Related information

- Car function view in the centre display (p. 157)
- Apps (p. 511)
- Managing the centre display (p. 153)

NOTE

- It is not possible to move apps so that a subview is left with no apps.
- Apps cannot be added to locations that are already occupied.

Symbols in the centre display's status bar

Below is an overview of the symbols that can be shown in the centre display's status bar.

The status bar shows activities in progress and, in some cases, their status. Not all symbols are shown all the time due to the limited space in the status bar.

Symbol	Specification
	Connected to the Internet.
	Roaming activated.
	Bluetooth device connected.
	Information sent to and from GPS.
	Clock.
	Wireless phone charging

Related information

- Centre display's views (p. 154)
- Messages in the centre display (p. 169)
- Phone (p. 523)
- Date and time (p. 113)

Keyboard in centre display

The centre display keyboard makes it possible make entries using keys. It is also possible to "draw in" letters and characters on the screen by hand.

The keyboard can be used to enter characters, letters and numbers, e.g. to write text messages from the car, enter passwords or search for articles in the Manual in the centre display.

The keyboard is only shown when entries can be made on the screen.

Hides the keyboard. If this is not possible, the button is not shown.

Changes keyboard mode to write letters and characters by hand instead.

Pressing the confirmation button above the keypad confirms the entered text. The appearance of the button differs depending on context.

Variants of a letter or character

Variants of a letter or character, e.g. é or è, can be entered by holding down the letter or character. A box is displayed showing possible variants of letters or characters. Press the required variant. If no variant is selected, the original letter/character is entered.

Related information

- Changing keyboard language in centre display (p. 160)
- Enter the characters, letters and words manually in the centre display (p. 161)
- Managing the centre display (p. 153)
- Managing text messages (p. 527)

Changing keyboard language in centre display

To make it possible to switch between different languages for the keyboard, the languages must first be added under Settings.

Adding or deleting languages in settings

The keyboard is automatically set to the same languages as the system language. The language for the keyboard can be adapted manually without affecting the system language.

1. Press
   Tap on at the bottom of the display.
2. Press System, Languages and input, Keyboard.
3. Select one or more languages from the list.
   > It is now possible to switch between the selected languages directly from the keyboard for text input.

If no languages have been actively selected under Settings, the keyboard retains the same language as the car's system language.

Switching between different languages in the keyboard

When a number of languages have been selected in Settings, the button in the keyboard is used to switch between the different languages.

To change keyboard language with list:

1. Give a long press on the button.
   > A list opens.
2. Select the required language. If more than four languages have been selected, it is possible to scroll in the list from the keyboard.
   > The keyboard is adapted to the selected language and other word suggestions are given.

To change the keyboard language without displaying the list:

– One short press of the button.
  > The keyboard is adapted to the next language in the list without displaying the list.

Related information

- Changing system language (p. 162)
- Keyboard in centre display (p. 159)

Enter the characters, letters and words manually in the centre display

The centre display keyboard allows you to enter characters, letters and words on the screen by "drawing" by hand.

Press the button on the keyboard to change from typing with the keys to entering letters and characters by hand.

Return to the keyboard with regular character input.

Writing characters/letters/words by hand

1. Write a character, a letter, a word or parts of a word in the area for hand-written letters. Write a word or parts of a word above each other or on a line.
   > A number of suggested characters, letters or words is shown. The most likely choice is found at the top of the list.
2. Enter the character/letters/word by waiting a moment.
   > The character/letter/word at the top of the list is entered. It is also possible to select a different character by pressing the required character, letter or word in the list.

Related information

- Keyboard in centre display (p. 159)

IMPORTANT

Do not use sharp objects on the screen as they may scratch it.

Changing system units

Unit settings are made via the centre display.

1. Open app view.
2. Press .
3. Continue to System, Units.
4. Select the standard units desired for distance, speed and temperature, for example.
   > The units in the driver display and centre display are changed.

Related information

- Overview of centre display (p. 146)
- Resetting user data (p. 163)
- Changing system language (p. 162)

Changing system language

Language settings are defined by the centre display.

1. Open app view.
2. Press .
3. Continue to System, Languages and input.
4. Select the required language.
   > The language in the driver display and centre display are changed.

When the system language is changed, so does the language of Google Assistant. If you want a different language for Google Assistant, you can select it separately in the Google Assistant menu.

Related information

- Overview of centre display (p. 146)
- Resetting user data (p. 163)
- Changing system units (p. 162)

NOTE

Changing the language in the centre display may mean that some information in the Manual is not compliant with national or local laws and regulations. Do not switch to a language that is difficult to understand as this may make it difficult to find your way back through the screen structure.

Resetting user data

User data and system settings are restored via the centre display.

Settings that can be restored to their defaults:

- app settings
- network settings (only admin)
- factory reset (admin only) – profiles, user data, connected keys and personal settings are deleted.

In the event of a change of ownership, user data and system settings should be restored to a factory reset.

Restoring settings via the centre display

1. Press .
2. Press .
3. Continue to System, Reset option to restore the desired setting.

The user profile must have admin privileges, which can be obtained by clicking the Become an admin option in the profile view, in order to be able to reset network settings or reset the car to factory settings.

For a factory reset, all car keys must be in the car.

Related information

- Overview of centre display (p. 146)
- Change of ownership with Polestar Connect (p. 550)
- Approval of terms and conditions and data collection (p. 26)
- Profile settings (p. 165)

User profiles

Many of the settings made in the car can be saved in a personal user profile.

When first used, or after a factory reset, the Owner profile is pre-installed and active in the car.

The Owner profile has administrator privileges and cannot be deleted.

Tap on or the initials at the top of the centre display to access profiles.

If a profile is active, the profile's initials are shown at the top of the centre display. A symbol is shown instead when the system is logged out.

When logged out, the system can be used as a guest user. In which case, the functionality is limited, and data are not saved between driving cycles.

Profile types

A user profile can have two roles: administrator or user. The roles have different rights for what can be done in the profile. A profile with a user role can change to an administrator role. Up to 6 profiles can be stored in the car, and all can have administrator profiles.

Automatic profile selection

It is possible to link your key to a profile. In this way, the profile is selected automatically with all its settings every time the specific key is identified during unlocking or opening the driver door.

The last used profile is activated if a key is not linked to a specific profile.

General information on settings

Changes to the car's settings are saved in different ways depending on the category the settings belong to. The settings can be personal, global or adapted to a drive cycle.

Managing user profiles

Personal preferences

Personal settings are saved to an active profile.

There are two types of personal settings:

- Function settings – settings that apply to driver support, driver's side climate control, the driver's seat, the door mirrors, as well as interior and exterior lighting. These settings retain their values when a profile is added or when logging out from an active profile.
- Audio and media settings – settings that apply to, navigation, audio and media system, apps, and linked accounts. These settings return to standard settings when a profile is added or when logging out from an active profile.

Global settings

The global settings are not changed when the profile is changed. They remain the same regardless of which profile is active. Examples of global settings are passenger side climate control, memory function for passenger seat, and some system settings.

Drive cycle defaults

A number of settings return to their defaults[11] after a drive cycle.

It is possible to adjust the values of these settings while driving. In the next drive cycle, the settings will return to their standard value.

Related information

- Managing user profiles (p. 164)
- Profile settings (p. 165)
- Connect key to user profile (p. 167)
- Storing a position for seat and door mirrors (p. 215)
- Using stored position for seat and rearview mirrors (p. 216)
- Link account to user profile (p. 167)
- Connect key to user profile (p. 167)

It is possible to switch to another profile even if the key being used is linked to a different profile.

Creating a profile

1. Tap on the initials or the symbol at the top of the centre display.
2. Select Add profile.
3. The profile is created.
   > The profile is set as the active profile.

A guided flow for how the new profile can be set appears while creating a new profile.

It is possible to create up to six different profiles.

Selecting a profile

1. Tap on the initials or the symbol at the top of the centre display.
   > Selectable profiles are displayed.
2. Select the desired profile.
   > The profile is selected and the system loads the settings for the selected profile.

Signing out a profile

1. Tap on the initials at the top of the centre display.
2. Select Log out.
   > Signing out takes place from the profile and it is no longer possible to access the accounts linked with that profile.
3. The system is set in a logged-out mode and changed settings are not saved in any profile.

Related information

- User profiles (p. 163)
- Centre display's views (p. 154)

11 Defaults may vary depending on market.

Profile settings

- Profile settings (p. 165)
- Connect key to user profile (p. 167)
- Link account to user profile (p. 167)
- Approval of terms and conditions and data collection (p. 26)
- Connect key to user profile (p. 167)

NOTE

- To cancel the moving of the seat when changing the profile, tap on any of the buttons on the seat part of the front seat.
- Creating, selecting and logging out of a user profile are only possible while the car is stationary.

In profile settings, you can change profile name, add and remove linked keys, link accounts, such as Polestar ID and Google, activate lock screen, as well as delete the active profile.

In profile settings, you can change profile name, add and remove linked keys, link accounts, such as Polestar ID, activate lock screen, as well as delete the active profile.

You can give a profile admin privileges by clicking on the Become an admin option in the profile view, which is required to be able to restore network settings or reset the car to factory settings.

Activating the screen lock

When the screen lock is activated, a passcode is required to be able to use the active profile.

1. Tap on the initials at the top of the centre display.
2. Tap on → in the active profile.
3. Select Screen lock.
4. Select the type of screen lock and then activate.
   > The screen lock will be shown in the centre display when changing to a profile with passcode, and each time the system is restarted.

Deleting a profile

Settings that have been saved to one or more profiles can only be deleted if the car is stationary.

1. Tap on the initials at the top of the centre display.
2. Tap on → in the active profile.
3. Select Delete this profile.
   > User information and connections linked to the profile are deleted.

4. The system is set in a logged-out mode and changed settings are not saved in any profile.

Accept the internet terms of use[12]

1. Tap on the initials at the top of the centre display.
2. Tap on → in the active profile.
3. Select Internet terms of service and follow the instructions.

The terms of use must be approved once per car in order to use the internet.

Change profile name

1. Tap on the initials at the top of the centre display.
2. Tap on → in the active profile.
3. Press ✎.
4. Change the profile name and confirm using the keyboard.

Become administrator

1. Tap on the initials at the top of the centre display.
2. Tap on → in the active profile.
3. Press Become an admin.

Related information

- User profiles (p. 163)
- Managing user profiles (p. 164)
- Link account to user profile (p. 167)
- Connect key to user profile (p. 167)
- Resetting user data (p. 163)
- Connecting the 极星 app to the car (p. 552)
- Connecting the Polestar app to the car (p. 554)
- Approval of terms and conditions and data collection (p. 26)

NOTE

User profiles can only be deleted when the car is stationary.

12 Applies to certain markets.

Link account to user profile

It is possible to add accounts to a selected user profile. Examples of accounts that can be added are Polestar ID and Google account.

It is possible to add accounts to a selected user profile. An example of accounts that can be added is Polestar ID.

Adding an account

1. Tap on the initials at the top of the centre display.
2. Tap on → in the active profile.
3. Press Accounts.
4. Select Add profile.
   > A list of accounts that can be added is shown.
5. Select the desired account.

Then follow the instructions that are shown. The instructions depend on the type of account selected.

Related information

- User profiles (p. 163)
- Profile settings (p. 165)

Connect key to user profile

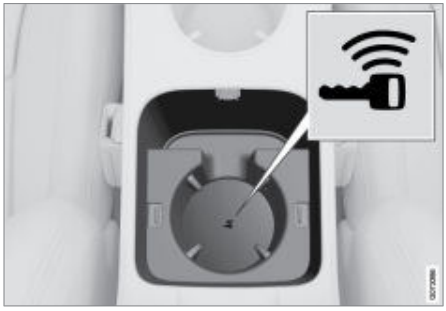
It is possible to connect your key to a profile. In this way, the profile is selected automatically with all its settings every time the specific key is identified during unlocking or opening the driver door.

The first time the key is used, it is not linked to any specific profile. When the car is started, the Owner profile, or the last used profile, will automatically be activated.

Linking a key to a profile

1. Tap on the initials at the top of the centre display.
2. Tap on → in the active profile.
3. Select Connect key to profile to link the selected key to a profile.

It is only possible to link a profile to the key currently being used in the car. If there are multiple keys in the car, the More than one key found. Place the key you want to connect on the backup reader. message is shown.



Backup reader's location in the tunnel console.

Disconnecting a key from a profile

1. Tap on at the top of the centre display.
2. Tap on the profile required.

3. Select Disconnect key from profile to remove the active profile from the linked key.

You can unlink a key from a profile even if the key is not inside the car.

Related information

- User profiles (p. 163)
- Keys (p. 270)
- Profile settings (p. 165)

NOTE

If the key was previously linked to another profile, the link is moved from the previous profile to the active profile.

Messages in the centre display

1. Shown at the top of the centre display. Requires immediate management, and can have up to three buttons that allow the user to manage the message. Dismiss by swiping right or left. The message is then saved in the notification view.
2. Shown as a window in the centre display and requires immediate attention. Can have 1-3 buttons for management.
3. Shown for a few seconds at the top of the centre display. It is not possible to do anything with the notification and it is not saved anywhere.

The following illustrative example shows how messages and notifications can be shown in the centre display in different contexts.

Related information

- Overview of centre display (p. 146)
- Centre display's views (p. 154)

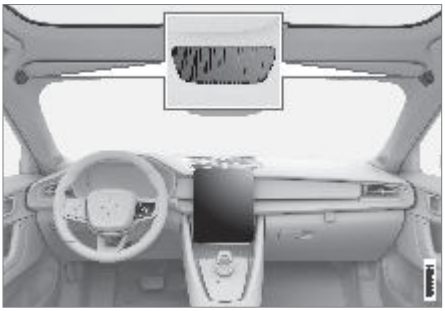
Voice control with NUGU auto Assistant

NUGU auto Assistant, which is integrated in the car, makes it possible to use your voice to control a range of functions, e.g. the climate control system, T map auto for navigation, FLO, the radio* and your phone.

What is NUGU auto Assistant?

NUGU auto Assistant is a digital assistant that makes it possible to use your voice to control various in-car functions and get help with other things such as searching for information in the NUGU encyclopaedia, weather forecasts, etc.

The Assistant understands natural speech, i.e. you do not need any knowledge of specific commands to get the system to do different things. Instead, there is the option to speak freely with the system, which provides feedback in the form of responses to what was requested, or indicates whether what was said could not be understood.



Voice control system microphones

Which areas can be controlled via NUGU auto Assistant?

Besides asking the Assistant for information searched for via the NUGU encyclopaedia, searching for weather forecasts, etc., a number of in-car functions can be controlled using voice commands. These include:

- radio*
- volume
- music via FLO
- phone and text messages
- navigation via T map auto
- the car's climate control.

Related information

- Using voice control (p. 173)
- Using voice control (p. 174)
- Using voice control (p. 175)
- T map AUTO (p. 564)
- Amap Auto (p. 565)
- Google Maps (p. 566)
- FLO media app (p. 514)

WARNING

The driver always holds overall responsibility for driving the vehicle in a safe manner and complying with all applicable rules of the road.

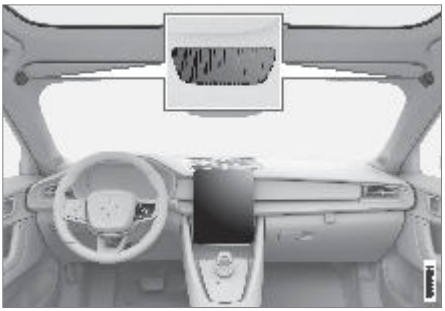
Voice control

Voice control, which is integrated in the car, makes it possible to use your voice to control a range of functions, e.g. the climate control system, the navigation system, the radio* and your phone.

What is voice control?

The voice control system is a digital assistant that makes it possible to use your voice to control various in-car functions and get help with other things such as searching for information on the Internet, weather forecasts, etc.

The Assistant understands natural speech, i.e. you do not need any knowledge of specific commands to get the system to do different things. Instead, the user can speak freely with the system, which provides feedback in the form of responses to what was requested or indicating if it cannot understand what the user wanted.



Voice control system microphones

Which areas can be controlled via voice control?

Besides asking the Assistant for information searched for via the Internet, searching for weather forecasts, or stock exchange information, etc., a number of in-car functions can be controlled using your voice. These include:

- Amap Auto
- media
- phone
- the car's climate control.

Related information

- Using voice control (p. 173)
- Using voice control (p. 174)
- Using voice control (p. 175)
- T map AUTO (p. 564)
- Amap Auto (p. 565)
- Google Maps (p. 566)

WARNING

The driver always holds overall responsibility for driving the vehicle in a safe manner and complying with all applicable rules of the road.

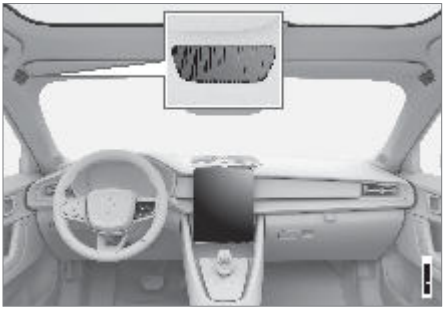
Voice control with Google Assistant

Google Assistant, which is integrated in the car, makes it possible to use your voice to control a range of functions, e.g. the climate control system, Google Maps for navigation, the radio* and your phone.

What is Google Assistant?

Google Assistant is a digital assistant that makes it possible to use your voice to control various in-car functions and get help with other things such as searching for information, weather forecasts, managing your Google Calendar, etc.

The Assistant understands natural speech, i.e. you do not need any knowledge of specific commands to get the system to do different things. Instead, the user can speak freely with the system, which provides feedback in the form of responses to what was requested or indicating if it cannot understand what the user wanted.



Voice control system microphone

Which areas can be controlled via Google Assistant?

In addition to asking the Assistant for information searched for via Google, searching for weather forecasts, or managing the Google calender[13], etc., a number of in-car functions can be controlled using your voice. These include:

- media
- FM radio*
- phone and SMS[14]
- navigation via Google Maps
- climate.

Related information

- Using voice control (p. 173)
- Using voice control (p. 174)
- Using voice control (p. 175)
- T map AUTO (p. 564)
- Amap Auto (p. 565)
- Google Maps (p. 566)

WARNING

The driver always holds overall responsibility for driving the vehicle in a safe manner and complying with all applicable rules of the road.

NOTE

A poorer connection may limit the number of available functions.

13 Internet connection required.
14 Dictating SMS only works for phones with Android or iOS 13 or later.

Using voice control

NUGU auto Assistant makes it possible to use voice control to control different in-car functions or, for example, to ask for information such as a weather forecast.

Starting NUGU auto Assistant

NUGU auto Assistant can be started in three different ways

- by saying the voice command Aria or Tinkerbell
- by pressing briefly on the steering wheel button for voice control .

The system shows that it is active and listening by saying a greeting and by showing a symbol in the centre display.

The symbol that is shown in the centre display when NUGU auto Assistant is active.

Example of voice control

After the system has started it is possible to make different requests by speaking freely. Several examples of how to use voice control are given below.

- "Navigate home" – Show directions to the address stored in T map Auto as home address for the T map account used to log in.
- "Read my messages" – Read out text messages sent to the phone.
- "Raise the temperature" – Raises the temperature in the passenger compartment.
- "Play music" – Plays music in the FLO media app.

Logging in with an NUGU account means that the assistant will be more personalised when the car is connected. For example, it is possible to call contacts stored in NUGU Smart Home devices in the car.

Reactivating the voice control

It is not necessary to reactivate the system when additional voice control is required, provided that subsequent prompts are issued relatively soon after the first.

After approximately 7 seconds since the last prompt, the system will ask the user to speak, but if this does not happen the system will be deactivated after approximately a further 7 seconds. The system must then be reactivated if new instructions shall be given.

The system can determine if the person speaking is communicating with the system or talking with, for example, the co-occupant. Speech not directed towards the system is filtered away.

For more information, see the help section in the car's NUGU app.

Related information

- Voice control with NUGU auto Assistant (p. 170)
- Voice control (p. 171)
- Voice control with Google Assistant (p. 172)
- Link account to user profile (p. 167)
- T map AUTO (p. 564)
- Amap Auto (p. 565)
- Google Maps (p. 566)
- FLO media app (p. 514)

NOTE

- NUGU auto Assistant is only available in Korean. Read more at nugu.co.kr for availability or, if possible, try Korean.

Using voice control

NOTE

- The instructions above are general descriptions and include third-party suppliers. Availability, procedure and functionality are subject to change or variation.

The voice control system makes it possible to use your voice to control different functions in the car or, for example, to ask for information such as a weather forecast.

Starting the voice control system

There are two different ways of starting the voice control system

- by saying the voice command 你好极星
- by pressing briefly on the steering wheel button for voice control .

The system shows that it is active and listening by saying a greeting and by showing a symbol in the centre display.

Symbol that is shown in the centre display when the voice control system is active.

If the system is started but no further instructions are given, help information will be shown in the centre display after a few seconds.

Identification of driver and passenger

The system can be activated from both the driver's side and the passenger side. A symbol in the centre display shows that the system has registered who it is that is speaking. The system will continue to listen to who is speaking, and other sound or conversation from the other side will be ignored.

The system shows that it has registered who it is that is speaking. In this case it is the driver.

Reactivating the voice control

It is not necessary to reactivate the system when additional voice control is required, provided that subsequent prompts are issued relatively soon after the first.

Using voice control

After approximately 10 seconds since the last prompt, the system will ask the user to speak, but if this does not happen the system will be deactivated after approximately a further 10 seconds. The system must then be reactivated if new instructions shall be given.

The system can determine if the person speaking is communicating with the system or talking with, for example, the co-occupant. Speech not directed towards the system is filtered away.

Related information

- Voice control with NUGU auto Assistant (p. 170)
- Voice control (p. 171)
- Voice control with Google Assistant (p. 172)

NOTE

The instructions above are general descriptions and include third-party suppliers. Availability, procedure and functionality are subject to change or variation.

Google Assistant makes it possible to use your voice to control different functions in the car or, for example, to ask for information such as a weather forecast.

Starting Google Assistant

Google Assistant can be started in three different ways as follows

- say the voice command "Ok Google" or "Hey Google"[15]
- press briefly on the steering wheel button for voice control 
- tap on the microphone in the centre display  .

The system shows that it is active and listening by means of a brief audible signal[16] and a graphic confirmation in the centre display.

Example of voice control

After the system has started it is possible to make different requests by speaking freely. Several examples of how to use voice control are given below.

- "Navigate home" – Show directions to the address stored in Maps as home address for the Google account used to log in.
- "Read my messages" – Read out text messages sent to the phone.
- "Raise the temperature" – Raises the temperature in the passenger compartment.
- "Play music" – Plays back music in selected media app.

Logging in with a Google account means that the assistant will be more personalised when the car is online. For example, it is possible to call contacts stored in contacts.google.com or enquire about what is entered in Google Calendar.

15 "Hey Google" only works in certain languages.
16 When a voice command is used to start the system, you will hear the audible signal only if you pause before you continue your request.

Related information

- Voice control with NUGU auto Assistant (p. 170)
- Voice control (p. 171)
- Voice control with Google Assistant (p. 172)
- Link account to user profile (p. 167)
- Getting started with Google services (p. 35)

NOTE

- Google Assistant is not available in all languages as yet. Find out more at support.google.com about accessibility, or try another language if possible.
- The instructions above are general descriptions and include third-party suppliers. Availability, procedure and functionality are subject to change or variation.

Section 05
—
Lighting

Lighting control

The different lighting controls are used to control both exterior and interior lighting. The left-hand stalk switch activates and adjusts the exterior lighting. You can both activate and adjust the exterior and interior lighting via the centre display.

Exterior lighting

Rotating ring in the left-hand stalk switch.

When the car is started, the following functions are available for the rotating ring's different positions:

Position	Specification
0	Daytime running lights. Main beam flash can be used.
≡D⊂≡	Daytime running lights and position lamps. Position lamps when the car is parked.[A] Main beam flash can be used.
≡D	Dipped beam and position lamps. Main beam can be activated. Main beam flash can be used.
AUTO	Daytime running lights and position lamps in daylight. Dipped beam and position lamps in weak daylight or darkness, or when the front[B] and/or rear fog lamp is activated. The Active main beam function can be activated. Main beam can be activated when dipped beam is switched on. Main beam flash can be used.
≡CA	Active main beam on/off.

A If the car is stationary but running, the rotating ring can be moved to ≡D⊂≡ position from another position to switch on only the position lamps instead of other lighting.

B Some Pilot pack equipment may not be installed in your car model due to the global semiconductor shortage. For more information, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Position	Specification
0	US: Daytime running lights and position lamps are switched off. Canada: Daytime running lights and position lamps are switched on. Main beam flash can be used.
≡D⊂≡	Position lamps when the car is parked. US: Daytime running lights are switched off. Canada: Daytime running lights are on. Main beam flash can be used.

Position	Specification
	Dipped beam and position lamps. Main beam can be activated. Main beam flash can be used.
AUTO	Daytime running lights and position lamps in daylight.[A] Dipped beam and position lamps in weak daylight or darkness, or when the front* and/or rear fog lamp is activated. The Active main beam function can be activated. Main beam can be activated when dipped beam is switched on. Main beam flash can be used.
	Active main beam on/off.

A Only applies to US models: Daytime running lights and position lamps can be deactivated in the centre display.

Polestar recommends that AUTO mode is used when the vehicle is driven.

Related information

- Adjusting light functions via the centre display (p. 180)
- Interior lighting (p. 193)
- Adjusting light functions via the centre display (p. 180)
- Position lamps (p. 181)
- Daytime running lights (p. 182)
- Dipped beam (p. 183)
- Using main beam (p. 183)
- Active main beam (p. 184)
- Using direction indicators (p. 186)
- Active bending lights* (p. 187)
- Front fog lamps*/cornering lights* (p. 188)
- Rear fog lamp (p. 189)
- Brake lights (p. 190)
- Emergency brake lights (p. 190)
- Hazard warning flashers (p. 191)
- Using the guidance light (p. 192)
- Welcome light and Farewell light (p. 192)

WARNING

The car's lighting system is not able to determine when daylight is too weak or sufficiently strong, e.g. in fog and rain, in all situations.

The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the car is driven with a beam pattern suitable for the traffic situation and in accordance with applicable traffic regulations.

NOTE

Polestar recommends the use of Daytime Running Lights in the US. This is mandatory in Canada.

Adjusting light functions via the centre display

Light functions can be adjusted and activated via the centre display. This applies to approach lighting and welcome lighting, for example.

1. Tap on in the centre display.
2. Then tap on More.
3. Select Interior lights or Exterior lights and then select the function that needs to be adjusted.

Related information

- Lighting control (p. 178)
- Active main beam (p. 184)
- Using the guidance light (p. 192)
- Welcome light and Farewell light (p. 192)
- Using direction indicators (p. 186)
- Car function view in the centre display (p. 157)

Adapting the headlamp pattern from the headlamps

The headlamp pattern for headlamps with pixel technology[17] can be reset when changing from right-hand to left-hand traffic, and vice versa. This function adapts the light from the headlamps to reduce the risk of dazzling oncoming traffic.

The headlamp pattern for headlamps without pixel technology does not need to be reset when changing from right-hand to left-hand traffic, and vice versa.

To reset the headlamp pattern, proceed as follows:

1. Tap on in the centre display.
2. Then tap on More.
3. Select Exterior lights and activate/deactivate Left-hand traffic/Right-hand traffic.

Related information

- Adjusting light functions via the centre display (p. 180)
- Active bending lights* (p. 187)
- Car function view in the centre display (p. 157)

17 Some Pilot pack equipment may not be installed in your car model due to the global semiconductor shortage. For more information, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Position lamps

Position lamps can be used so that other road users can see the car if it stops or is parked. The position lamp is switched on with the rotating ring on the stalk switch.

Stalk switch rotating ring in position lamps position.

Turn the rotating ring to the position - the front and rear position lamps are switched on (number plate lighting is switched on at the same time).

If the car is in drive mode, the daytime running lights are switched on instead of the front position lamps.

Canada models: If the car is in drive mode, the daytime running lights are switched on instead of the front position lamps.

US models: When the AUTO position is selected, the daytime running lights can be deactivated in the centre display. At which point, the position lamps are also deactivated. In weak daylight or darkness, position lamps and dipped beam are switched on.

If the car is stationary but running, the rotating ring can be moved to the position lamp position from another position to switch on only the position lamps instead of other lighting.

When driving for more than 30 seconds at max. 10 km/h (approx. 6 mph), or if the speed exceeds 10 km/h (approx. 6 mph), the daytime running lights are switched on. The driver should then turn to a position other than .

If the tailgate is opened when it is dark outside, the rear position lamps come on (if not already switched on) to warn road users approaching from behind. The position lamps illuminate for approx. 10 minutes or until the tailgate is closed.

Adaptive rear lamp function

Rear position lamp has an adaptive function. Depending on the ambient light, the light intensity of the rear position lamps is adjusted. When it is light outside the rear position lamps light more brightly so that other vehicles can see them more clearly. To prevent dazzling other vehicles when it is dark outside, the rear position lamps become dimmer.

The number plate lighting and trailer lighting are not affected by the adaptive function.

Related information

- Lighting control (p. 178)
- Daytime running lights (p. 182)
- Usage modes (p. 450)

Daytime running lights

The car has sensors that detect the light conditions in the surroundings. With the stalk switch's rotating ring in position 0 , or AUTO, the daytime running lights are switched on. In position AUTO, the headlamps[18] change automatically to dipped beam in weak daylight or darkness.

The car has sensors that detect the light conditions in the surroundings. With the stalk switch's rotating ring in position AUTO, the daytime running lights are switched on. In weak daylight or darkness, the headlamps change automatically to dipped beam.

Stalk switch rotating ring in AUTO position.

If the stalk switch rotating ring is in the AUTO position, the daytime running lights (DRL[19]) are switched on when the car is driven in daylight. The car automatically changes lighting from daytime running light to dipped beam in weak daylight or darkness. Changing to dipped beam also takes place if the rear fog lamp is activated.

US models: When the AUTO position is selected, the daytime running lights can be deactivated in the centre display. At which point, the position lamps are also deactivated. In weak daylight or darkness, position lamps and dipped beam are switched on.

US models: With the rotating ring on the stalk switch in position 0 or , the daytime running lights are not switched on.

Canada models: With the rotating ring on the stalk switch in position 0 or , the daytime running lights are switched on.

Related information

- Lighting control (p. 178)
- Usage modes (p. 450)
- Dipped beam (p. 183)

WARNING

This system help to save energy - it cannot determine in all situations when daylight is too weak or sufficiently strong, e.g. in mist and rain.

The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the car is driven with the correct beam pattern for the traffic situation and in accordance with applicable traffic regulations.

NOTE

Polestar recommends the use of Daytime Running Lights in the US. This is mandatory in Canada.

18 Some Pilot pack equipment may not be installed in your car model due to the global semiconductor shortage. For more information, contact Polestar Customer Support.
19 Daytime Running Lights

Dipped beam

When driving with the stalk switch's rotating ring in the AUTO position, dipped beam is activated automatically in weak daylight or darkness.

Stalk switch rotating ring in AUTO position.

With the stalk switch's rotating ring in AUTO position, dipped beam is also activated automatically if the front*[20] and rear fog lamps are activated.

With the stalk switch's rotating ring in the position, dipped beam is always activated when the car is started.

Tunnel detection

The car detects when it is driven into a tunnel and switches from daytime running lights to dipped beam.

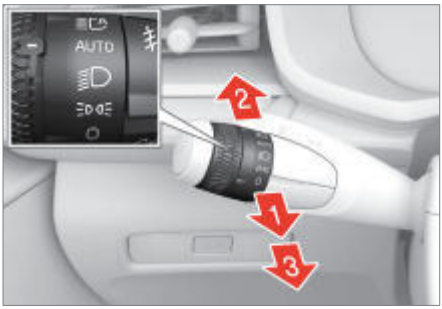
Note that the rotating ring in the left-hand stalk switch must be in AUTO mode for tunnel detection to work.

Related information

- Lighting control (p. 178)
- Usage modes (p. 450)
- Daytime running lights (p. 182)
- Bulb replacement (p. 673)

Using main beam

Main beam is operated with the left-hand stalk switch. Main beam is the car's strongest lighting and should be used when driving in the dark for better visibility, as long as it does not dazzle other road users.



Steering wheel stalk switch with rotating ring.

Main beam flash

Move the stalk switch backwards slightly to main beam flash position. Main beam comes on until the stalk switch is released.

Main beam

Main beam can be activated when the steering wheel stalk switch's rotating ring is in position AUTO[5] or . Activate main beam by moving the stalk switch forwards.

Deactivate by moving the stalk switch backwards.

When main beam has been activated the symbol illuminates in the driver display.

Related information

- Lighting control (p. 178)
- Active main beam (p. 184)
- Bulb replacement (p. 673)

20 Some Pilot pack equipment may not be installed in your car model due to the global semiconductor shortage. For more information, contact Polestar Customer Support.

5 When dipped beam is activated.

Active main beam

NOTE

When main beam has been activated, it can be deactivated by moving the stalk switch backwards to either position or position.

Active main beam uses the camera sensor in the upper edge of the windscreen. The camera sensor registers the headlamp beams from oncoming traffic or the rear lights of vehicles ahead, and then switches from main beam to dipped beam.

Active main beam uses the camera sensor in the upper edge of the windscreen. The camera sensor registers the headlamp beams from oncoming traffic or the rear lights of vehicles ahead, and then switches from main beam to dipped beam, or adaptive functionality*.

The symbol represents active main beam.

The function can start while driving in the dark when the car's speed is approx. 20 km/h (approx. 12 mph) or higher. The function can also take streetlights into account. When the camera sensor no longer detects any oncoming car or car in front, main beam is switched on again after about a second.

Activate active main beam

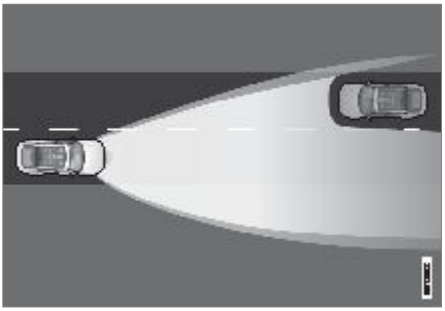
Active main beam is activated and deactivated by turning the left-hand stalk switch to position . The rotating ring then returns to position AUTO. When active main beam is activated, the symbol illuminates with a white glow in the driver display. When main beam is activated, the symbol shines blue.

If active main beam is deactivated while main beam is on the lighting is immediately reset to dipped beam.

Active main beam does not need to be reactivated every time the car is started.

Adaptive functionality*

The active main beam has adaptive functionality. In this case, unlike with conventional dimming, the main beam continues to shine on both sides of oncoming vehicles or vehicles in front. Only the part of the beam pointing directly at the vehicle is dimmed.



Adaptive functionality: Dipped beam directly towards oncoming vehicle, but continued main beam on both sides of the vehicle.

The main beam is partly dimmed, that is, if the light beam shines slightly brighter than dipped beam, the symbol in the driver display shines blue.

On a motorway or at high speed, the system may shift from adaptive to automatic functionality.

Limitations for active main beam

The camera sensor on which the function is based has limitations.

If the symbol is shown in the driver display, together with the message Active High Beam Temporarily unavailable, then switching between main and dipped beam must be performed manually.

The same applies if this symbol is shown together with the message Windscreen sensor blocked See Manual.

Active main beam may be temporarily unavailable e.g. in situations with dense fog or heavy rain. When active main beam becomes available again, or the windscreen sensors are no longer blocked, the message is extinguished and active main beam is reactivated.

Related information

- Lighting control (p. 178)
- Using main beam (p. 183)
- Camera unit (p. 412)
- Recommended maintenance for camera unit (p. 414)

WARNING

Active main beam is an aid for using the optimum beam pattern when conditions are favourable.

The driver always bears responsibility for manually switching between main and dipped beam when traffic situations or weather conditions so require.

Using direction indicators

The car's direction indicators are operated with the left-hand stalk switch. The direction indicator lamps flash three times or continuously, depending on how far up or down the stalk switch is moved.

Direction indicators.

Short flash sequence

Move the stalk switch up or down to the first position and release. The direction indicator lamps flash three times. If the function is deactivated via the centre display, the lamps will flash once.

Continuous flash sequence

Move the stalk switch up or down to its end position.

The stalk switch remains in its position and is moved back manually, or automatically by the steering wheel movement.

Related information

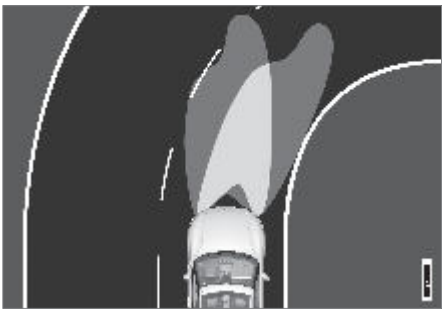
- Hazard warning flashers (p. 191)
- Adjusting light functions via the centre display (p. 180)
- Bulb replacement (p. 673)

NOTE

- This automatic flashing sequence can be stopped by moving the stalk switch immediately in the opposite direction.
- If the symbol for direction indicators in the driver display flashes more quickly than normal - see the message in the driver display.

Active bending lights*[22]

Active bending lights are designed to provide additional illumination in bends and junctions.



Headlamp pattern with function deactivated (left) and activated (right) respectively.

Active bending lights follow steering wheel movements to provide additional illumination in bends and junctions and can thereby provide the driver with improved visibility.

The function is activated automatically when the car is started. In the event of a fault in the function, the symbol illuminates in the driver display at the same time as the driver display shows an explanatory text.

The active bending lights are only switched on in weak daylight or in darkness as well as when the stalk switch's rotating ring is in AUTO position. The car also needs to be in motion with main beam or dipped beam activated.

The function can also be activated/deactivated via the centre display.

1. Tap on in the centre display.
2. Then tap on More.
3. Select Exterior lights and activate/deactivate active bending light.

Related information

- Adjusting light functions via the centre display (p. 180)
- Car function view in the centre display (p. 157)
- Front fog lamps*/cornering lights* (p. 188)

22 Some Pilot pack equipment may not be installed in your car model due to the global semiconductor shortage. For more information, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Front fog lamps*[23]/ cornering lights*[23]

The front fog lamps can be activated in order to provide better visibility when driving in fog.

The cornering lights come on automatically in weak daylight or darkness in order to illuminate the area diagonally in front of the car.

Front fog lamps

Fog lamp button.

The front fog lamps can be switched on when the car is in drive mode and the stalk switch's rotating ring is in AUTO, or position.

Tap on the button to activate and deactivate. The symbol shines in the driver display when the fog lamps are switched on.

The fog lamps are switched off automatically when the car is switched off or when the rotating ring on the stalk switch is set to the 0 position.

Cornering lights

The front fog lamps include the cornering light function, which temporarily illuminates the area diagonally in front of the car in the direction in which the steering wheel is turned on a sharp bend, or in the direction in which the direction indicators are indicating.

The function is activated in weak daylight or darkness when the stalk switch's rotating ring is in the AUTO or position and the speed of the car is lower than approx. 30 km/h (approx. 20 mph).

Both cornering lights are also switched on as a supplement to the reversing light when reversing. They are extinguished when the car drives forward again.

The function is activated when the car is supplied by the factory, and it can be activated and deactivated via the centre display.

Related information

- Lighting control (p. 178)
- Rear fog lamp (p. 189)
- Switching off the car (p. 449)
- Adjusting light functions via the centre display (p. 180)

NOTE

Regulations on the use of fog lamps vary from country to country.

23 Some Pilot pack equipment may not be installed in your car model due to the global semiconductor shortage. For more information, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Rear fog lamp

The rear fog lamp is considerably stronger than a normal rear light and should only be used in reduced visibility due to fog, snow, smoke or dust so that other road users have an early warning of a vehicle ahead.

Button for rear fog lamp.

The rear fog lamp can only be switched on when

- the car is in drive mode and the stalk switch's rotating ring is in AUTO or position
- the car is in drive mode and the stalk switch's rotating ring is in position and the front fog lamps are switched on.

Press the button to switch the lights on/off. The symbol in the driver display illuminates when the rear fog lamp is switched on.

The rear fog lamp is switched off automatically when

- the steering wheel stalk switch's rotating ring is in position 0
- the car is switched off
- the stalk switch's rotating ring is in position and the front fog lamps are switched off.

Related information

- Checking trailer lights* (p. 494)
- Lighting control (p. 178)
- Usage modes (p. 450)
- Bulb replacement (p. 673)
- Front fog lamps*/cornering lights* (p. 188)

NOTE

Regulations on the use of rear fog lamps vary from country to country.

Brake lights

The brake light automatically comes on during braking.

The brake light is illuminated when the brake pedal is depressed and when the car is braked automatically by one of the driver support systems.

The brake light also comes on during regenerative braking if the braking force exceeds a certain level.

Related information

- Emergency brake lights (p. 190)
- Brake functions (p. 451)
- Bulb replacement (p. 673)
- Driving support systems (p. 300)

Emergency brake lights

Emergency brake lights are activated to alert vehicles behind about heavy braking.

The function means that the brake light flashes instead of - as in normal braking - shining with a constant glow.

This function causes an additional tail light on each side of the vehicle to illuminate.

The emergency brake lights are activated during heavy braking or if the ABS system is activated at high speeds.

After the driver brakes to a low speed and then releases the brake, the brake light returns to normal glow.

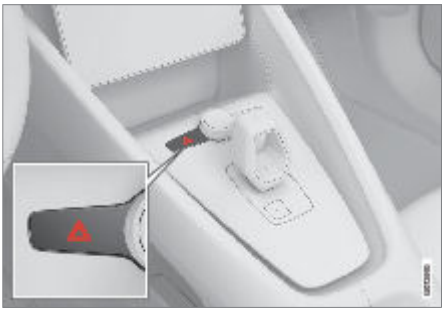
The car's hazard warning flashers are activated at the same time. These flash until the driver accelerates the car to a higher speed again or switches off the car's hazard warning flashers.

Related information

- Brake lights (p. 190)
- Foot brake (p. 451)
- Hazard warning flashers (p. 191)

Hazard warning flashers

Hazard warning flashers warn other road users by means of all of the car's direction indicators being activated simultaneously. The function can be used to give a warning in the event of traffic hazards.



Button for hazard warning flashers.

Press the button to activate the hazard warning flashers.

The hazard warning flashers are automatically activated when the car brakes so powerfully that the emergency brake lights are activated and the speed is low. The hazard warning flashers start to flash after the emergency brake lights have stopped flashing and are then deactivated automatically when the car drives away again or are deactivated if the button is depressed.

Hazard warning flashers are activated automatically in the event of a collision.

Related information

- Emergency brake lights (p. 190)
- Using direction indicators (p. 186)
- Auto braking after a collision (p. 460)

NOTE

Regulations for the use of hazard warning flashers may vary between countries.

Using the guidance light

Some of the exterior lighting can be kept switched on to work as guidance light after the car has been locked.

To activate the function:

1. Make sure the car is switched off.
2. Move the left-hand stalk switch forward toward the instrument panel and release.
3. Get out of the car and lock the door.
   > The symbol comes on in the driver display to indicate that the function is activated and the exterior lighting is switched on: Position lamp, headlamp, number plate lighting and lighting in outer handles.

The length of time that the guidance light remains on can be set via the centre display.

Related information

- Adjusting light functions via the centre display (p. 180)
- Welcome light and Farewell light (p. 192)
- Switching off the car (p. 449)

Welcome light and Farewell light

Welcome lighting is switched on when the car is unlocked, and farewell lighting is activated when the driver leaves the car.

Welcome lighting

The function is activated when the key is used for unlocking. In daylight, position lamps, interior roof lamps, floor lights and cargo area lighting are activated. In weak daylight or darkness, headlamps[24], number plate lighting and lighting in the outer handles, with their beams directed towards the ground, are also activated.

The lighting stays on for approximately 2 minutes if no doors are opened. If a door is opened within the activation time, the time for the interior lighting and lighting in the outer handles will be extended.

The function can be activated and deactivated via the centre display.

1. Tap on in the centre display.
2. Then tap on More.
3. Select Exterior lights and activate/deactivate the function.

Farewell light

When the driver leaves the car after driving, the car keeps the position lamps and number plate lighting on. The lighting stays on for approximately 2 minutes or until the car is locked.

If the rotating ring on the stalk switch is in position, the position lamps will remain switched on until they are switched off manually.

Related information

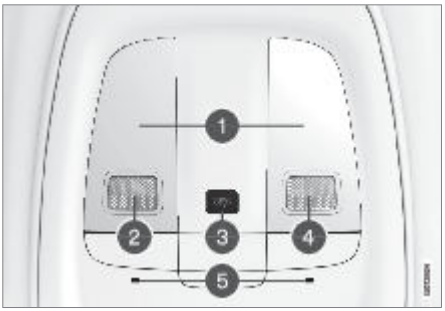
- Adjusting light functions via the centre display (p. 180)
- Using the guidance light (p. 192)
- Keys (p. 270)

24 Some Pilot pack equipment may not be installed in your car model due to the global semiconductor shortage. For more information, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Interior lighting

The passenger compartment is equipped with several types of lighting, e.g. general interior lighting, adjustable decor illumination* and reading lighting.

Front roof lighting



Lighting and controls in the roof console.

1. General interior lighting
2. Reading lamp, left-hand side
3. Button for passenger compartment lighting and automatic passenger compartment lighting
4. Reading lamp, right-hand side
5. Ambience lights

Reading lighting

The reading lamps in the roof console are switched on or off by pressing gently and briefly on each reading lamp. The brightness is adjusted by pressing the lamp and keeping your finger on it.

Passenger compartment lighting

The floor lighting and general interior lighting are switched on or off with a short press on the button for passenger compartment lighting in the roof console.

Auto function for passenger compartment lighting

The automatic function is activated and deactivated by holding depressed the button for passenger compartment lighting. When the button illuminates

- white, the automatic function is activated
- orange, the automatic function is deactivated.

When the automatic function is activated, the passenger compartment lighting is illuminated according to the following.

The passenger compartment lighting comes on when

- the car is unlocked
- a side door is opened.

The passenger compartment lighting goes off when

- the car is locked
- gear position D, R or N is selected
- a side door is closed
- a side door has remained open for approx. 2 minutes.

Rear roof lighting

There are reading lamps in the rear part of the car which are also used as general interior lighting. In cars without panoramic roof, the reading lamp is located in the centre.

In cars with panoramic roof, there are two lamp units on each side of the roof.*

The reading lamps are switched on or off by pressing gently and briefly on the lamp. The brightness is adjusted by pressing the lamp and keeping your finger on it.

Polestar symbol in the roof*

A Polestar symbol is projected in the roof when the car is unlocked. The light is dimmed while driving and is extinguished on locking. The brightness can be adjusted in the centre display.

Glovebox lighting

Glovebox lighting is switched on and off respectively when the lid is opened or closed.

Sun visor mirror lighting

The lighting for the mirror in the sun visor is switched on or off when the lid is opened or closed.

Ground lighting*

The ground lighting is switched on or off when the corresponding door is opened or closed.

Lighting in the cargo area

The lighting in the cargo area is switched on or off when the tailgate is opened or closed.

Decor illumination*

The ambient light switches on when the doors are opened, and switches off when the car is locked. The brightness of the decor lighting can be adapted and adjusted in the centre display.

Ambience lights

There are a number of lights in the roof that provide ambience light. The light can be adapted and adjusted in the centre display.

Lighting in storage compartments in doors*

The lighting in door storage compartments is illuminated when the car has been unlocked and is extinguished on locking. The brightness can be adapted and adjusted in the centre display.

Lighting in the tunnel console*

The lighting in the tunnel console is switched on when the car is unlocked and switched off when the car is locked. The brightness can be adjusted in the centre display.

Related information

- Adjusting interior lighting (p. 195)
- Lighting control (p. 178)
- Usage modes (p. 450)
- Passenger compartment interior (p. 628)

Adjusting interior lighting

The lamps inside the car come on differently depending on the usage position. You can adjust the interior lighting via the centre display.

Adjusting the interior lighting via the centre display

1. Tap on in the centre display.
2. Press More.
3. Select Interior lights.
4. Adjust the required setting for interior lighting.

Related information

- Interior lighting (p. 193)
- Adjusting light functions via the centre display (p. 180)
- Usage modes (p. 450)

Section 06

—

Windows, glass and mirrors

Windows, glass and mirrors

The car contains several different windows, glass panes and mirrors. A number of these are laminated, tinted and/or heated.

The windscreen and panoramic roof* have laminated glass. Laminated glass is reinforced, which provides better protection against break-ins and improved sound insulation in the passenger compartment.

The symbol is shown on the windows where the glass is laminated.[25]

Related information

- Pinch protection for windows (p. 198)
- Panoramic roof* (p. 205)
- Power windows (p. 199)
- Rearview and door mirrors (p. 202)
- Using windscreen wipers (p. 206)
- Using windscreen washers (p. 208)
- Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors (p. 242)

IMPORTANT

Avoid using tinted film with a metallised surface coating on the rear window. This may disrupt reception as the car's radio antenna is located inside the window.

Pinch protection for windows

All power windows in your car have pinch protection which is deployed if they are blocked by any object while opening or closing.

In the event of blocking, the movement stops and then reverses automatically to approx. 50 mm (approx. 2 inches) from the blocked position (or to full ventilation position).

It is possible to force pinch protection when closing has been cancelled, e.g. when ice is formed, by continuing to press the control in one and the same direction.

If any fault arises with the pinch protection, a reset sequence can be tested.

Related information

- Reset sequence for window pinch protection (p. 199)
- Operating power windows (p. 200)

WARNING

If the 12 V battery is disconnected, the automatic opening and closing function must be reset to work properly. A reset must take place for pinch protection to work.

25 Does not apply to the windscreen or panoramic roof which are always laminated and thus do not have this symbol.*

Reset sequence for window pinch protection

If a problem occurs with the electrical functions for the electric windows, a reset sequence can be tested.

1. Start with the window in closed position.
2. Then operate the controls in the manual position 3 times upwards to closed position.
   > The system is initialised automatically.

Related information

- Pinch protection for windows (p. 198)
- Operating power windows (p. 200)

WARNING

If the 12 V battery is disconnected, the automatic opening and closing function must be reset to work properly. A reset must take place for pinch protection to work.

Power windows

Each door has a control panel for the electrically-driven power windows. The driver's door has controls for operating all windows.

Driver's door control panel

1. Window controls in the driver's door.
2. Window controls in the passenger door.
3. Controls for windows in the rear doors.

Related information

- Operating power windows (p. 200)
- Pinch protection for windows (p. 198)
- Reset sequence for window pinch protection (p. 199)
- Keys (p. 270)
- Digital Key (p. 263)

Operating power windows

WARNING

Children, other passengers or objects may be trapped by the moving parts.

- Always operate the windows with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the controls.
- Never leave children alone in the car.
- Remember to always switch off the power to the power windows by removing all the keys from the car when leaving the driver's seat. Note that if the car's software is not updated to version 2.1[26] or later, the power windows can be reactivated either through the centre display or by occupying the driver's seat, even if the keys are not inside the car.
- Never put an object or part of the body through the windows, even if the car's electrical system is fully disconnected.

All electric windows can be operated using the control panel in the driver's door – only the window in the passenger door is operated using the control panel in the passenger door.

The power windows are equipped with pinch protection. If any fault arises with the pinch protection, a reset sequence can be tested.

Operating the power windows

- Operating without auto. Move one of the controls gently up or down. The power windows move up or down as long as the control is held in position.
- Operating with auto. Move one of the controls up or down to the end position and release it. The window runs automatically to its end position.

In order for the power windows to be used, the car must be in Comfort or Drive mode. It is only possible to operate one control at a time.

Related information

- Power windows (p. 199)
- Pinch protection for windows (p. 198)
- Reset sequence for window pinch protection (p. 199)
- Usage modes (p. 450)
- Keys (p. 270)
- Digital Key (p. 263)

26 For more information on software updates, see polestar.com/manual

WARNING

Children, other passengers or objects may be trapped by the moving parts.

- Always operate the windows with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the controls.
- Never leave children alone in the car.
- Remember to always switch off the power to the power windows by removing all the keys from the car when leaving the driver's seat. Note that if the car's software is not updated to version 2.1[27] or later, the power windows can be reactivated either through the centre display or by occupying the driver's seat, even if the keys are not inside the car.
- Never put an object or part of the body through the windows, even if the car's electrical system is fully disconnected.

NOTE

- One way to reduce the pulsating wind noise when the rear windows are open is to also open the front windows slightly.
- The windows cannot be opened at speeds above approx. 180 km/h (approx. 112 mph), but they can be closed.

  The driver always bears responsibility for following traffic regulations in force.

NOTE

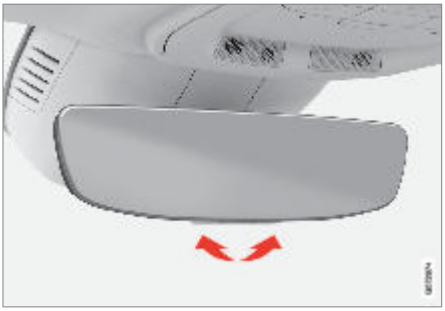
- It may not be possible to operate windows at low temperatures.

27 For more information on software updates, see polestar.com/manual

Rearview and door mirrors

The rearview mirrors and door mirrors can be used to give the driver better visibility to the rear.

Interior rearview mirror



Adjust the interior rearview mirror by angling it manually.

The rearview mirror is equipped with automatic dimming* that can be adjusted in the centre display.

Adjust the interior rearview mirror by angling it manually.

The interior rearview mirror is equipped with HomeLink* and automatic dimming*.

Door mirrors

The door mirrors have wide-angle fields[28] in the outer edges of the mirrors to make it easier to see objects in blind spots.

The door mirror positions are adjusted with the joystick in the driver's door control panel. There are also a number of automatic settings that can be linked to the memory function buttons for the power seat.

Related information

- HomeLink®* (p. 501)
- Adjusting rearview mirror dimming* (p. 203)
- Angling adjustment of the door mirrors (p. 204)
- Storing a position for seat and door mirrors (p. 215)
- Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors (p. 242)

WARNING

- Both door mirrors are curved to provide optimal vision. Objects may appear to be further away than they actually are.
- The mirror on the passenger side is bent to provide optimal vision. Objects may appear to be further away than they actually are.

28 Applies to certain markets.

Adjusting rearview mirror dimming*

Automatic dimming*

Bright light from behind is automatically dimmed by the interior rearview and door mirrors* when it is dark outside or in limited light conditions, such as when driving in tunnels. It is possible to set whether automatic dimming should be active or not in the centre display while driving.

Dimming for both the interior rearview mirror and the door mirrors is adjusted automatically using light sensors in the interior rearview mirror.

1. Tap on in the centre display.
2. Press More.
3. Tap on Mirrors and select the preferred setting.

Manual dimming

The interior rearview mirror can be dimmed using a control in the mirror's lower edge.

1. Dim by moving the control in towards the passenger compartment.
2. Return to normal mode by moving the control towards the windscreen.

In cars with controls for manual dimming, there is no option for automatic* dimming.

Related information

- Rearview and door mirrors (p. 202)
- Angling adjustment of the door mirrors (p. 204)

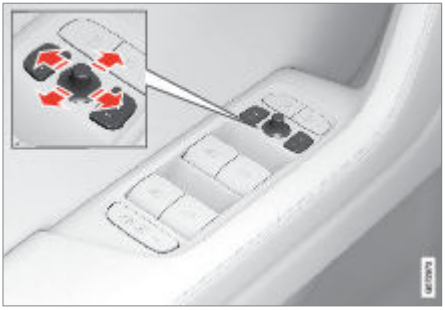
NOTE

If the sensors are obscured by e.g. parking permits, transponders, sun visors or objects in the seats or on the parcel shelf in such a way that light is prevented from reaching the sensors, then the dimming function of the interior rearview and door mirrors is reduced.

Angling adjustment of the door mirrors

To ensure better visibility to the rear, the door mirrors need to be set to the preferences of the driver. There are a number of automatic settings that can also be linked to the memory function buttons for the power seat.

Using controls for door mirrors



Controls for door mirrors

The door mirror positions are adjusted with the joystick in the driver's door control panel. The car's electrical system must be active.

1. Press the L button for the left-hand door mirror or the R button for the right-hand door mirror. The light in the button illuminates.
2. Adjust the position with the joystick in the centre.
3. Press the L or R button again. The light should no longer be illuminated.

Fold in rearview mirrors electrically

The mirrors can be retracted for parking/driving in narrow spaces.

1. Depress the L and R buttons simultaneously.
2. Release them after approximately 1 second. The mirrors automatically stop in the fully retracted position.

Fold out the mirrors by pressing down the L and R buttons simultaneously. The mirrors automatically stop in the extended position with the previous setting.

Restoring to original position

Mirrors that have been moved out of position by an external force must be reset electrically to their original position for electric retracting/extending to work correctly.

1. Fold in the door mirrors by pressing down the L and R buttons simultaneously.
2. Fold them out again by pressing the L and R buttons simultaneously.
3. Repeat the above procedure as necessary.

The mirrors are returned to the original position.

Angling during parking

A door mirror can be angled down for the driver to view the side of the road when parking, for example.

– Engage reverse gear and press the L or R button.

Note that the button may need to be pressed twice, depending on whether it was already preselected. The button flashes when the door mirror is angled down. When reverse gear is disengaged, the door mirror automatically returns to its original position.

Automatic angling during parking

With this setting, the door mirrors are automatically angled down when reverse gear is selected. The folded position is preset and cannot be adjusted.

1. Tap on in the centre display.
2. Press More.

3. Tap on Mirrors and select the preferred setting.

You can make the door mirrors return to their original position by pressing the L or R button twice.

Automatic retraction when locking

The rearview mirrors fold in/out automatically when the car is locked/unlocked with the key.

Related information

- Rearview and door mirrors (p. 202)
- Adjusting rearview mirror dimming* (p. 203)
- Storing a position for seat and door mirrors (p. 215)
- Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors (p. 242)

NOTE

If you manually fold the mirrors with the L and R buttons and then lock the car, they will not fold out automatically when you unlock the car, even if this setting has been made. Extending must then be carried out manually or when the car is driven and exceeds a certain speed.

Panoramic roof*

The roof is an entire panoramic roof in tinted glass in order to damp incoming light, heat and ultraviolet radiation.

There is a Polestar symbol at the roof console that illuminates when the car is running. It can then be seen from both inside and outside the vehicle's passenger compartment.

Related information

- Windows, glass and mirrors (p. 198)

Wiper blades and washer fluid

Together with the washer fluid, the wipers aim to improve visibility.

The nozzles for the windscreen wipers are integrated on the top side of the wiper arm. Washer fluid is ejected when window washing is activated and the wiper arms start to move.

The fact that the nozzles are integrated in the wiper arm helps to bring about more effective window washing at different speeds and in various weather conditions, e.g. strong winds. It may also reduce the risk of obscuring the driver's vision, which is otherwise common when washing the windscreen in the traditional way. Integrated nozzles of this type also result in more efficient consumption of washer fluid.

The washer nozzles are heated* automatically in cold weather in order to prevent the washer fluid freezing.

Information indicating that the washer fluid needs topping up appears in the driver display when there is approx. 1 litre (1 qt) of washer fluid remaining.

Related information

- Using the rain sensor (p. 207)
- Using windscreen washers (p. 208)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 696)
- Setting the wiper blades in service position (p. 695)
- Replacing windscreen wiper blades (p. 694)
- Using windscreen wipers (p. 206)

Using windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers are designed to clean the windscreen. Different settings for the windscreen wipers are set using the right-hand stalk switch.

Right-hand stalk switch.

1 The thumbwheel is used to set rain sensor sensitivity and wiper swipe frequency.

Single sweep

Lower the stalk switch and release to make one sweep.

Windscreen wipers off

0 Move the stalk switch to position 0 to switch off the windscreen wipers.

Intermittent wiping

INT Move the lever up to switch the wipers to intermittent wiping. Set the number of sweeps per time unit with the thumbwheel when intermittent wiping is selected.

Continuous wiping

Raise the stalk switch for the wipers to sweep at normal speed.

Raise the stalk switch further for the wipers to sweep at high speed.

Using the rain sensor

Related information

- Using the rain sensor (p. 207)
- Using windscreen washers (p. 208)
- Wiper blades and washer fluid (p. 206)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 696)
- Setting the wiper blades in service position (p. 695)
- Replacing windscreen wiper blades (p. 694)

IMPORTANT

- Before activating the wipers - ensure that the wiper blades are not frozen in, and that any snow or ice on the windscreen is scraped away.
- Use plenty of washer fluid when the wipers are cleaning the windscreen. The windscreen must be wet when the windscreen wipers are operating.

The rain sensor automatically starts the windscreen wipers based on how much water it detects on the windscreen. Rain sensor sensitivity can be adjusted with the thumbwheel on the right-hand stalk switch.

Right-hand stalk switch.

1. Rain sensor button
2. Thumbwheel sensitivity/frequency

When the rain sensor is activated, the rain sensor symbol is shown in the driver display.

The rain sensor is automatically on or off when the car starts depending on the position of the rain sensor when the car was switched off.

Activating the rain sensor

To activate the rain sensor, the windscreen wipers must be in position 0, or in the position for single sweep.

Activate the rain sensor by pressing the rain sensor button .

Move the lever down to make the wipers move.

Turn the thumbwheel upward for higher sensitivity and downward for lower sensitivity. An extra sweep is made when the thumbwheel is turned upward.

Using windscreen washers

Deactivating the rain sensor

Deactivate the rain sensor by pressing the rain sensor button or moving the stalk switch up to another wiper program.

The rain sensor is deactivated automatically when the car is switched off.

The rain sensor is deactivated automatically when wiper blades are set in service position. The rain sensor is reactivated when service mode has been deactivated.

Related information

- Using windscreen washers (p. 208)
- Wiper blades and washer fluid (p. 206)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 696)
- Setting the wiper blades in service position (p. 695)
- Replacing windscreen wiper blades (p. 694)
- Using windscreen wipers (p. 206)

IMPORTANT

The windscreen wipers could start and be damaged in an automatic car wash. Switch off the rain sensor before washing the car. The symbol in the driver display extinguishes.

The windscreen washers are designed to clean the windscreen. The right-hand stalk switch is used to initiate the windscreen washers.

Initiating the windscreen washers

Washing function, right-hand stalk switch.

– Move the right-hand stalk switch towards the steering wheel to initiate the windscreen washers.
  > The windscreen wipers will make several more sweeps once the stalk switch has been released.

When approx 1 litre (1 qt) of washer fluid remains in the reservoir, the Refill washer fluid, level low together with the symbol appears in the driver display.

Related information

- Using the rain sensor (p. 207)
- Wiper blades and washer fluid (p. 206)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 696)
- Setting the wiper blades in service position (p. 695)
- Replacing windscreen wiper blades (p. 694)
- Using windscreen wipers (p. 206)

IMPORTANT

Avoid activating the washer system when it is frozen or the washer reservoir is empty, otherwise there is a risk of damaging the pump.

Section 07

—

Seats and steering wheel

Front seats

The seat has a range of adjustment options to increase your comfort.

Related information

- Multifunctional front seat function overview (p. 213)
- Power front seat (p. 213)
- Adjusting the power front seat (p. 214)
- Storing a position for seat and door mirrors (p. 215)
- Using stored position for seat and rearview mirrors (p. 216)
- Adjusting the length of the seat cushion in the front seat (p. 217)
- Adjusting the lumbar support in the front seat (p. 218)
- Rear seat (p. 219)

Seat position horizontally and vertically, as well as backrest rake

In order to increase your comfort, the seat has a range of setting options for the seat's position horizontally and vertically, as well as backrest rake.

Angle of backrest and longitudinal position for seat at normal working position set by the manufacturer:

Length adjustment

The seat is placed in the centre position of the adjustment range, but the longitudinal position may vary depending on where the end stops are located.

Height adjustment

The seat is placed in the centre position of the adjustment range.

Angle of seatback

The torso seatback angle is set to 25 degrees.

Multifunctional front seat function overview

Enhance the seating comfort using the multi-function control.

Related information

- Front seats (p. 212)
- Adjusting the power front seat (p. 214)
- Storing a position for seat and door mirrors (p. 215)
- Using stored position for seat and rearview mirrors (p. 216)
- Adjusting the length of the seat cushion in the front seat (p. 217)
- Adjusting the lumbar support in the front seat (p. 218)

Power front seat

The car's front seats have a range of setting options in order to enhance comfort. The power seat can be moved forwards/backwards and upwards/downwards. The front edge of the seat cushion can be raised/lowered as well as adjusted in length and the backrest inclination can be changed. The lumbar support can be adjusted upward/downward/forward/backward.

Seat adjustment can be made when the car is in Comfort or Drive mode. Adjustment can also be performed within a certain time after the car has been switched off.

Angle of seatback and longitudinal position for seat at normal working position set by the manufacturer:

Length adjustment

The seat is placed in the centre position of the adjustment range, but the longitudinal position may vary depending on where the end stops are located.

Height adjustment

The seat is placed in the centre position of the adjustment range.

Angle of seatback

The torso seatback angle is set to 25 degrees.

Related information

- Front seats (p. 212)
- Multifunctional front seat function overview (p. 213)
- Adjusting the power front seat (p. 214)
- Storing a position for seat and door mirrors (p. 215)
- Using stored position for seat and rearview mirrors (p. 216)
- Adjusting the length of the seat cushion in the front seat (p. 217)

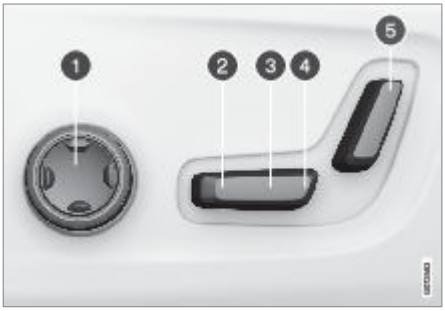
Adjusting the power front seat

- Adjusting the lumbar support in the front seat (p. 218)
- Usage modes (p. 450)

IMPORTANT

The power seats have overload protection that is triggered if any seat is blocked by an object. If this happens, remove the object and then move the seat again.

Set to desired sitting position using the control on the front seat's seating section. Use the different controls to set the various comfort functions.



1. Four-way button that controls the seat's four-way lumbar support.
2. Raise/lower the seat cushion's front edge by adjusting the control up/down.
3. Raise/lower the seat by means of adjusting the control up/down.
4. Move the seat forward/backward by adjusting the control forward/backward.
5. Change the backrest inclination by adjusting the control forward/backward.

Only one movement (forward/back/up/down) can be made at a time.

The backrests of the front seats cannot be lowered fully forward.

Related information

- Front seats (p. 212)
- Multifunctional front seat function overview (p. 213)
- Power front seat (p. 213)
- Storing a position for seat and door mirrors (p. 215)
- Using stored position for seat and rearview mirrors (p. 216)

Storing a position for seat and door mirrors

- Adjusting the length of the seat cushion in the front seat (p. 217)
- Adjusting the lumbar support in the front seat (p. 218)

You can store the position for power seat and door mirrors in the memory buttons.

Store two different positions for the power seat and the door mirrors using the memory buttons. The buttons are located on the inside of one of the front doors or both.

1. Button M for storing settings.
2. Memory button.
3. Memory button.

Storing a position

1. Adjust seat and door mirrors to the desired position.
2. Press and hold the M button depressed. The light indicator in the button illuminates.
3. Within three seconds, press and hold the 1 or 2 button.
   > When the position has been stored in the selected memory button, an acoustic signal can be heard and the light indicator in the M button extinguishes.

If none of the memory buttons is depressed within three seconds then the M button extinguishes and no storing takes place.

The seat or the door mirrors must be readjusted before a new memory can be set.

Using stored position for seat and rearview mirrors

If the positions for the power seat and the door mirrors have been stored, they can be activated by using the memory buttons.

Using a stored setting

To use a stored position, hold one of the memory buttons depressed, 1 (2) or 2 (3), until the stored position is reached.

If the memory button is released, the movement of the seat and door mirrors will be stopped.

Related information

- Front seats (p. 212)
- Multifunctional front seat function overview (p. 213)
- Power front seat (p. 213)
- Adjusting the power front seat (p. 214)
- Storing a position for seat and door mirrors (p. 215)
- Adjusting the length of the seat cushion in the front seat (p. 217)
- Adjusting the lumbar support in the front seat (p. 218)
- Angling adjustment of the door mirrors (p. 204)

Related information

- Front seats (p. 212)
- Multifunctional front seat function overview (p. 213)
- Power front seat (p. 213)
- Adjusting the power front seat (p. 214)
- Using stored position for seat and rearview mirrors (p. 216)
- Adjusting the length of the seat cushion in the front seat (p. 217)
- Adjusting the lumbar support in the front seat (p. 218)
- Angling adjustment of the door mirrors (p. 204)

Adjusting the length of the seat cushion in the front seat

WARNING

- Because the driver's seat can be adjusted with the ignition off, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle.
- Movement of the seat can be STOPPED at any time by pressing any button on the power seat control panel.
- Do not adjust the seat while driving.
- Adjust the seat so that you can reach and operate the pedals and gear lever in a safe and comfortable way.
- Make sure there is nothing under the seats when they are being adjusted.

The length of the seat cushion can be adjusted using the handle on the front of the seat.

Control for seat cushion adjustment.

1. Grip the handle (1) on the front of the seat and pull upwards.
2. Adjust the length of the seat cushion.
3. Release the handle and make sure that the seat cushion has reached the correct position.

Related information

- Front seats (p. 212)
- Multifunctional front seat function overview (p. 213)
- Power front seat (p. 213)
- Adjusting the power front seat (p. 214)
- Storing a position for seat and door mirrors (p. 215)
- Using stored position for seat and rearview mirrors (p. 216)
- Adjusting the lumbar support in the front seat (p. 218)

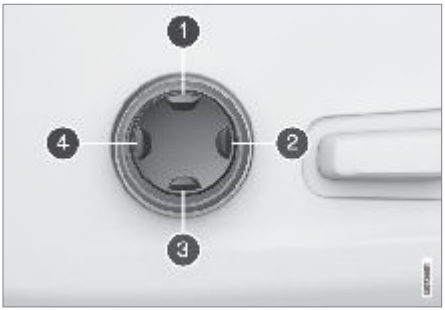
Adjusting the lumbar support in the front seat

The lumbar support is adjusted using a control on the side of the seat cushion.

Four-way button that controls the car's four-way lumbar support.

The lumbar support can be adjusted forward/backward and up/down. The four-way button is located at the side of the seat part of the seat.

Adjusting the lumbar support



- Press the four-way button up (1)/down (3) to move the lumbar support upwards/downwards.
- Press the front section (4) of the four-way button to increase lumbar support.
- Press the rear section (2) of the four-way button to decrease lumbar support.

Related information

- Front seats (p. 212)
- Multifunctional front seat function overview (p. 213)
- Power front seat (p. 213)
- Adjusting the power front seat (p. 214)
- Storing a position for seat and door mirrors (p. 215)
- Using stored position for seat and rearview mirrors (p. 216)
- Adjusting the length of the seat cushion in the front seat (p. 217)

Rear seat

Polestar 2 has five seats. The rear seat is divided into two folding parts, with one or two passenger seats respectively.

Related information

- Front seats (p. 212)
- Child safety (p. 73)
- Child seats (p. 76)
- Folding the backrest in the rear seat (p. 219)
- Adjusting the head restraint in the rear seat (p. 221)

WARNING

Ensure that children up to the age of 12 are always securely fastened in the rear seat in a child car seat, booster seat or seat belt, depending on what is appropriate for their weight, height and age.

Folding the backrest in the rear seat

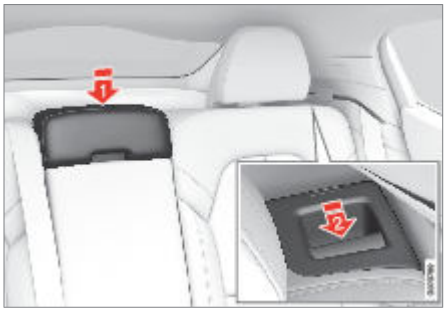
The rear seat's backrest is divided into two parts. The two parts can be folded forward individually.

The armrest* in the centre seat must be folded up before folding the seat down.

The through-load hatch in the rear seat must be closed before being folded.

Lowering the backrest

To facilitate folding of the rear seat, the car must be stationary and at least one rear door open.



Ensure that there are no occupants or objects in the rear seat.

1. Lower the centre seat's head restraint manually.
2. Pull the handles located on the car's left and right-hand backrests forwards to fold down the left and right-hand part of the rear seat respectively.
3. The backrest disengages from the lock and needs to be lowered manually to the horizontal position.

Raising the backrest

Raising the backrest to upright position is carried out manually:

1. Move the backrest up/back.

2. Press the backrest until the lock engages.
3. Adjust the centre seat head restraint if necessary.

Related information

- Rear seat (p. 219)
- Adjusting the head restraint in the rear seat (p. 221)

WARNING

- • Adjust the seat and fix it before driving away. Take care when adjusting the seat. Uncontrolled or careless adjustment can lead to trapping injuries.
  - When loading long objects, they must always be strapped in securely to avoid injury and damage during sudden braking.
  - When getting out of the car, activate the parking brake and always switch off the car (either by leaving the car or manually via the centre display).
  - Set the gear selector in P to prevent it from being moved by mistake.
  - For cars with automatic gearbox, set the gear selector in P to prevent it from being moved by mistake.
- The red indicator should no longer be displayed when the backrest has been folded back. If it is still displayed, the backrest has not been locked.
- Check that the backrests and head restraints in the rear seat are locked properly after being folded up.

IMPORTANT

There must be no objects in the rear seat when the backrest is to be folded. Nor may the seatbelts be connected. Otherwise there is a risk of damaging the upholstery in the rear seat.

NOTE

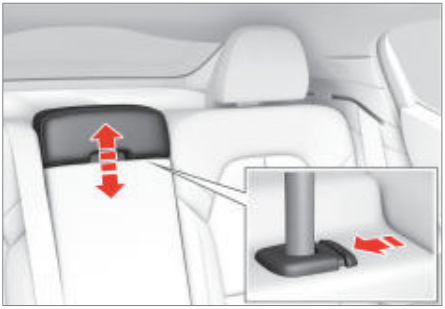
The front seats may need to be moved forward and/or the backrests may need to be adjusted to allow the rear backrests to be folded all the way forward.

Adjusting the head restraint in the rear seat

Adjust the centre seat head restraint according to the height of the passenger.

Adjusting the centre seat head restraint

The centre seat head restraints must be adjusted according to the height of the passenger so that it covers the entire back of the head if possible. Push it up manually as required.



To move the restraint down, the button (see the picture) must be pressed while carefully pushing down the head restraint at the same time.

Related information

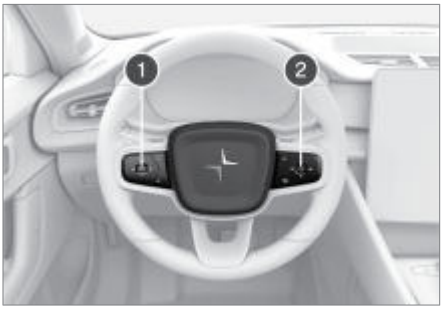
- Folding the backrest in the rear seat (p. 219)

WARNING

The head restraint for the centre seat must be in its lowermost position when the centre seat is not in use. When the centre seat is in use, the head restraint must be adjusted correctly to the height of the passenger so that it covers the entire back of the head, if possible.

Steering wheel controls and horn

The steering wheel houses the horn and controls for e.g. the driver support systems and voice control.



Keypads in the steering wheel.

1. Controls for driver support systems.[29][30]
2. Controls for voice control and menu, message and phone handling.

Horn

The horn is located in the centre of the steering wheel.

Related information

- Steering lock (p. 223)
- Adjusting the steering wheel (p. 223)

29 Speed Limiter, Cruise Control, Adaptive Cruise Control*, Distance Warning* and Pilot Assist*.
30 Cruise Control, Adaptive Cruise Control*, Distance Warning* and Pilot Assist*.

Steering lock

The steering wheel lock makes it difficult to steer the car if it is stolen, for example. A mechanical noise can be perceived when the steering lock is locked or unlocked.

Activating the steering lock

The steering lock is activated when the car is locked from the outside. If the car is left unlocked then the steering lock will be activated automatically after a while.

Deactivating the steering lock

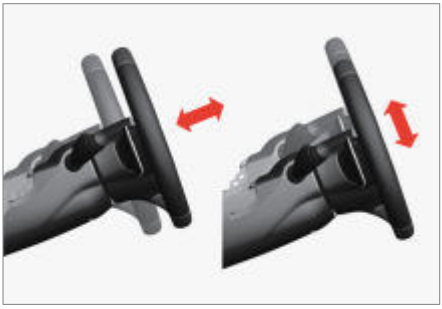
The steering lock is deactivated when the car is unlocked from outside. If the car is not locked, the steering wheel lock will be deactivated as long as the key is in the passenger compartment and the car is started.

Related information

- Steering wheel controls and horn (p. 222)
- Adjusting the steering wheel (p. 223)

Adjusting the steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted in different positions.



The steering wheel can be adjusted for height and for depth.

Adjusting the steering wheel

Lever for steering wheel adjustment.

1. Push the lever forwards to release the steering wheel.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the position that suits you.
3. Pull the lever back to fix the steering wheel in place. If the lever is stiff, press the steering wheel lightly at the same time as you move the lever back.

Related information

- Steering lock (p. 223)
- Steering wheel controls and horn (p. 222)
- Adjusting the power front seat (p. 214)

WARNING

Adjust the steering wheel and fix it before driving away. The steering wheel must never be adjusted while driving.

Section 08

—

Climate

Climate

The car is equipped with electronic climate control. The climate control system cools or heats as well as dehumidifies the air in the passenger compartment.

All climate control system functions are controlled from the centre display and physical buttons in the centre console.

Most climate functions can also be controlled using voice control. Some functions require an Internet connection for use with voice control.

Activation of climate control

The climate control functions are available when someone is sitting in the driver's seat or the centre display is in use.[31]

Climate control starts automatically during fast charging.

Related information

- Climate zones (p. 227)
- Climate control - sensors (p. 227)
- Perceived temperature (p. 228)
- Using voice control (p. 173)
- Using voice control (p. 174)
- Using voice control (p. 175)
- Parking climate (p. 246)
- Parking heater (p. 253)
- Air quality (p. 229)
- Air distribution (p. 233)
- Climate controls (p. 235)
- Usage modes (p. 450)
- ECO climate control (p. 473)

NOTE

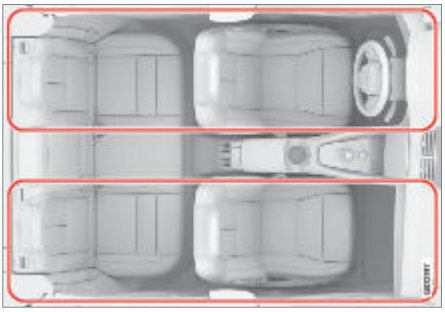
- If necessary, the climate control can be used to cool down the media system in the centre display. In these cases, the message Cooling infotainment system is shown in the driver display.
- Heating or cooling cannot be hastened by selecting a higher or lower temperature than the actual desired temperature.

31 Usage mode Comfort

Climate zones

The number of climate zones that the car is divided into governs the options for setting different temperatures for different parts of the passenger compartment.

2-zone climate



Climate zones with 2-zone climate.

With 2-zone climate, the temperature in the passenger compartment can be set separately for the left and right-hand sides.

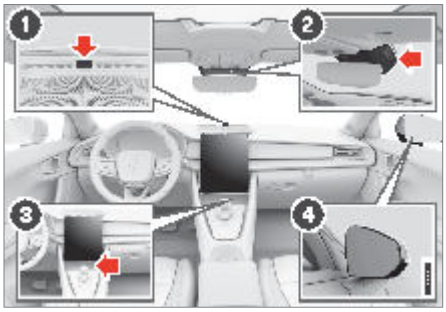
Related information

- Climate (p. 226)

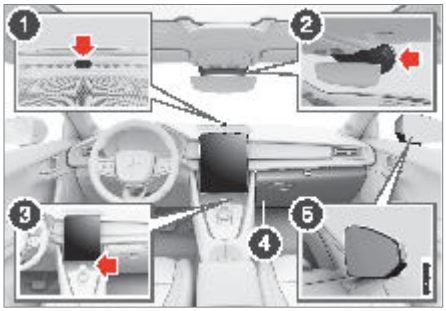
Climate control - sensors

The climate control system has a number of sensors to help control the climate in the car. Do not cover or block the sensors with clothing or other objects.

Sensor location



1. Sun sensor - on the upper side of the instrument panel.
2. Moisture sensor - in the casing by the interior rearview mirror.
3. Temperature sensor for the passenger compartment - by the physical buttons in the centre console.
4. Outside temperature sensor - in the right-hand door mirror.



Perceived temperature

1. Sun sensor - on the upper side of the instrument panel.
2. Moisture sensor - in the casing by the interior rearview mirror.
3. Temperature sensor for the passenger compartment - by the physical buttons in the centre console.
4. Airborne particulate matter sensor – on the underside of the glovebox.
5. Outside temperature sensor - in the right-hand door mirror.

With the Interior Air Quality System there is also an air quality sensor that is fitted into the climate control system air intake.

Related information

- Climate (p. 226)
- Interior Air Quality System (p. 231)

The climate control system regulates the climate in the passenger compartment based on the perceived temperature, not on actual temperature.

The temperature you select in the passenger compartment corresponds to the physically perceived temperature as affected by factors such as the ambient temperature, air speed, humidity, solar radiation, etc. in and around the car at the time.

The system includes a sun sensor which detects on which side the sun is shining into the passenger compartment. This means that the temperature can differ between the right and left-hand side's air vents despite the controls being set for the same temperature on both sides.

Related information

- Climate (p. 226)

Air quality

The materials selected for the passenger compartment and the air purification system ensure that the air quality in the passenger compartment is high.

Materials in the passenger compartment

The interior of the passenger compartment is designed to be pleasant and comfortable, even for people with contact allergies and for asthma sufferers.

Tested materials have been developed in order to reduce the quantity of dust in the passenger compartment and to contribute to making the passenger compartment easier to keep clean.

The carpets in both the passenger compartment and the cargo area are removable and easy to remove and clean.

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Polestar to clean the interior.

Air purification system

In addition to the passenger compartment filter, Clean Zone Interior Package and the Interior Air Quality System also help to maintain high air quality in the passenger compartment.

Related information

- Climate (p. 226)
- CleanZone (p. 230)
- Clean Zone Interior Package (p. 230)
- Interior Air Quality System (p. 231)
- Passenger compartment filter (p. 232)
- Activating and deactivating air recirculation (p. 240)

NOTE

If your car starts to smell of volatile organic compounds (VOC)[32] within a few months of you purchasing it, then it should be thoroughly aired. You should open all of the windows, regardless of whether you are in the car, in order to remove the smell. If the interior temperature of the car increases, such as if it has been parked in the sun for a long time, you should switch off the air recirculation and open all of the windows to air the car.

32 Volatile Organic Compounds

CleanZone

The CleanZone function checks and indicates whether or not all conditions have been met for good air quality in the passenger compartment.

If the conditions have not been met then the CleanZone text in the climate view is white. When all conditions have been met, this is indicated by the text changing colour to blue.

Conditions that need to be met:

- That all doors and the boot lid are closed.
- That all side windows are closed.
- That the air purification system Interior Air Quality System is activated.
- That the ventilation fan is activated.
- That the air recirculation is deactivated.

Related information

- Air quality (p. 229)
- Clean Zone Interior Package (p. 230)
- Interior Air Quality System (p. 231)
- Passenger compartment filter (p. 232)

NOTE

CleanZone does not indicate that the air quality is good. It only indicates that the conditions for good air quality have been met.

Clean Zone Interior Package

Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP) comprises a series of modifications that keep the passenger compartment even clearer from allergy and asthma-inducing substances.

The following is included:

- An enhanced fan function that means that the fan starts when the car is unlocked with the remote control key. The fan fills the passenger compartment with fresh air. The function starts when required and is disengaged automatically after a time or when one of the passenger compartment doors is opened. The amount of time the fan runs is reduced gradually due to reduced need up until the car is 4 years old.
- The fully automatic air purification system Interior Air Quality System (IAQS).

Related information

- Air quality (p. 229)
- CleanZone (p. 230)
- Interior Air Quality System (p. 231)
- Passenger compartment filter (p. 232)

Interior Air Quality System

Interior Air Quality System (IAQS) is a fully automatic air purification system that separates gases and particles to reduce the levels of odours and contaminants in the passenger compartment.

IAQS is a part of the Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP) and cleans the air in the passenger compartment from contaminants such as particles, hydrocarbons, nitrous oxides and ground-level ozone.

If the air quality sensor senses that the outside air is contaminated, the air intake is closed and air recirculation is activated.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating the air quality sensor (p. 231)
- Air quality (p. 229)
- CleanZone (p. 230)
- Clean Zone Interior Package (p. 230)
- Passenger compartment filter (p. 232)

NOTE

The air quality sensor should always be engaged in order to obtain the best air in the passenger compartment.

In a cold climate recirculation is limited so as to prevent misting.

In the event of misting, the defrost functions for windscreen, side windows and rear window should be used.

Activating and deactivating the air quality sensor

The air quality sensor is part of the fully automatic air purification system Interior Air Quality System (IAQS).

It is possible to set whether the air quality sensor should be activated/deactivated.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by swiping up on the home view.
2. Press Settings in the climate view.
3. Select the desired setting under Air quality sensor to activate/deactivate the air quality sensor.

Related information

- Interior Air Quality System (p. 231)

Passenger compartment filter

All air entering the car's passenger compartment is cleaned with a filter.

Replacing the passenger compartment filter

To maintain high climate system performance, the filter must be changed at regular intervals. Follow the Polestar Service Programme for the recommended replacement intervals. If the car is used in a severely contaminated environment, it may be necessary to replace the filter more often.

Related information

- Air quality (p. 229)
- CleanZone (p. 230)
- Clean Zone Interior Package (p. 230)
- Interior Air Quality System (p. 231)

NOTE

There are different types of passenger compartment filter. Make sure that the correct filter is fitted.

Air Quality app

The Air Quality app is a service that visualises the measured content of small airborne particulate matter inside and outside the car over time.

A climate sensor measures the content of $PM_{2.5}$ particles (particles smaller than 2.5 µm) in the passenger compartment. The content of contaminants outside the car is provided by an external service and is based on modelled data.

Related information

- Internet connection (p. 533)
- Apps (p. 511)
- Climate control - sensors (p. 227)

AQI app

The AQI app is a service that visualises the measured content of small airborne particulate matter inside and outside the car over time.

A climate sensor measures the content of $PM_{2.5}$ particles (particles smaller than 2.5 µm) in the passenger compartment. The content of contaminants outside the car is provided by an external service and is based on modelled data.

Related information

- Internet connection (p. 533)
- Apps (p. 511)
- Climate control - sensors (p. 227)

Air distribution

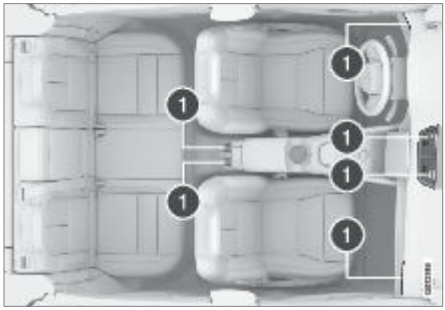
The climate control system distributes the incoming air via a number of different vents in the passenger compartment.

Automatic and manual air distribution

With auto-regulated climate running the air distribution takes place automatically. If necessary, the air distribution can be controlled manually.

Adjustable air vents

Some of the air vents in the car are adjustable, which means that you can open/close the vent to aim the air flow.



Location of adjustable air vents in the passenger compartment.

1. Four on the instrument panel and two at the rear of the tunnel console.

Related information

- Climate (p. 226)
- Changing air distribution (p. 234)
- Opening, closing and aiming the air vents (p. 234)

Changing air distribution

The air distribution can be changed manually if required.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by swiping up on the home view.
2. The air distribution buttons in the climate view are located in the middle around the AUTO button, from the top:
   - Air distribution - windscreen defroster vents
   - Air distribution - air vents in instrument panel and centre console
   - Air distribution - air vents in the floor

   Press one or more of the air distribution buttons in order to open/close the corresponding air flow.

   > The air distribution is changed and the buttons illuminate/extinguish.

   If all air distribution buttons are deselected in manual mode, the climate control system returns to automatically regulated climate control.

Related information

- Air distribution (p. 233)
- Opening, closing and aiming the air vents (p. 234)

Opening, closing and aiming the air vents

Some air vents in the passenger compartment can be opened, closed and aimed individually.

If the car's outer vents are aimed at the side windows then misting can be eliminated.

If the car's outer vents are aimed inwards then, in a hot climate, a comfortable environment is obtained in the passenger compartment.

Opening and closing the air vents

Air vents on the instrument panel and at the back of the tunnel console:

– Turn the rotary knob in the middle of the air vent to open/close the air flow from the vent.

  The air flow is at maximum when the marking on the knob is in vertical position.

Aiming the air vents

– Move the lever in the middle of the air vent horizontally/vertically to direct the air flow from the vent.

Related information

- Air distribution (p. 233)
- Changing air distribution (p. 234)

Climate controls

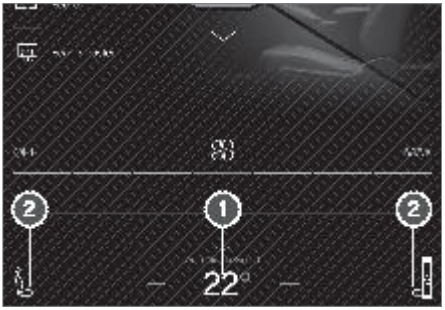
The climate control system's functions are controlled from physical buttons in the centre console, the centre display and the climate controls at the rear of the tunnel console.

Physical buttons in centre console

1. Button for max defroster.
2. Button for heated rear window and door mirrors.

Climate row in centre display

The most common climate functions can be regulated from the climate row.



1. Temperature controls for driver and passenger side.[33]
2. Controls for heated driver and front passenger seats, ventilated seats* and heated steering wheel*.

Climate view in centre display

Open the climate view in the centre display by swiping up on the home view.

Main climate

In addition to the climate row's functions, other main climate functions can also be controlled under Main climate.

Controls for max. defroster.

Controls for air conditioning.

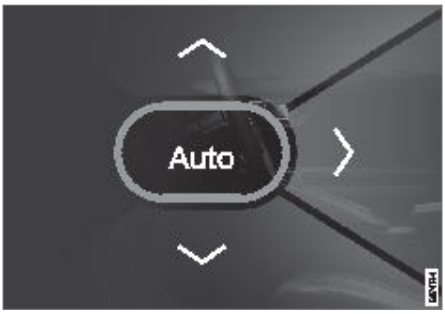
Controls for air recirculation.

Controls for heated rear window and door mirrors.

Controls for heater.

Controls for Eco Climate.

33 If synchronisation of the temperature has been deactivated, the current temperature is shown both on the driver and passenger side.



Button for auto-regulation of the climate control and arrows for air distribution.

Parking climate

The car's parking climate control can be adjusted under Parking climate.

Settings

Additional climate settings can be made under Settings.

Physical buttons at the rear of the tunnel console*

There are physical buttons at the rear of the tunnel console to control the seat heating for the rear seat.

Related information

- Climate (p. 226)
- Activating and deactivating heated front seat (p. 237)
- Activating and deactivating heated rear seat* (p. 238)
- Activating and deactivating ventilated front seat* (p. 238)
- Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel* (p. 239)
- Activating auto climate control (p. 240)
- Activating and deactivating air recirculation (p. 240)
- Activating and deactivating max defroster (p. 241)
- Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors (p. 242)
- Regulating fan level for front seat (p. 244)
- Synchronising temperature (p. 245)
- Activating and deactivating air conditioning (p. 245)
- Changing air distribution (p. 234)

Activating and deactivating heated front seat

The seats can be heated in order to increase comfort for driver and passengers when it is cold.

1. Press the seat button for the driver's side or passenger side in the centre display's climate row in order to open the controls for seat heating.

2. Tap on the heated seat button repeatedly to switch the heat on/off and toggle between the three heat levels.
   > The level changes and the button shows the set level.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 235)
- Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated front seat (p. 237)

WARNING

Heated seats must not be used by people who find it difficult to perceive an increase in temperature due to a lack of sensation or who otherwise have problems operating the controls for the heated seats.

Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated front seat

The seats can be heated in order to increase comfort for driver and passengers when it is cold.

It is possible to set whether automatic start of heated seats should be activated/deactivated when the driver gets into the car.[34] With automatic start activated, heating will start in an ambient temperature of 10°C (50°F) or lower.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by swiping up on the home view.
2. Press Settings in the climate view.
3. Select the desired setting under Auto driver seat heating and Auto passenger seat heating to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated driver's and passenger seat.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 235)
- Activating and deactivating heated front seat (p. 237)
- Usage modes (p. 450)

34 Usage mode Comfort

Activating and deactivating heated rear seat*[35]

The seats can be heated in order to increase comfort for driver and passengers when it is cold.

Activating and deactivating heated rear seat

Buttons for heated seats at the rear of the tunnel console.

– Tap repeatedly on the physical buttons for the heated seats on the left and right-hand side at the rear of the tunnel console in order to switch the seat heating on/off and toggle between the three heating levels.
  > The level changes and the LEDs in the button show the set level.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 235)

WARNING

Heated seats must not be used by people who find it difficult to perceive an increase in temperature due to a lack of sensation or who otherwise have problems operating the controls for the heated seats.

Activating and deactivating ventilated front seat*

The seats can be ventilated for extra comfort in a hot climate, for example.

The ventilation system is made up of fans in the seats and backrests, which suck air through the seat upholstery. The colder the air is in the passenger compartment, the greater the cooling effect.

1. Press the seat button for the driver's side or passenger side in the centre display's climate row in order to open the controls for ventilated seats.

2. Tap on the button for ventilated seats repeatedly to switch the ventilation On/Off and toggle between the three ventilation levels.
   > The level changes and the button shows the set level.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 235)

35 Applies to certain markets

Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel*[36]

The steering wheel can be heated in order to increase comfort for the driver when it is cold.

1. Tap on the driver side seat button in the climate row in the centre display to show the controls for the steering wheel heating.

2. Tap on the heated steering wheel button repeatedly to switch the heat on/off and toggle between the three heat levels.
   > The level changes and the button shows the set level.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 235)
- Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated steering wheel* (p. 239)

Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated steering wheel*

The steering wheel can be heated in order to increase comfort for the driver when it is cold.

It is possible to set whether automatic start of heated steering wheel should be activated/deactivated when the driver gets into the car.[37] With automatic start activated, heating will start in an ambient temperature of 10°C (50°F) or lower.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by swiping up on the home view.
2. Press Settings in the climate view.
3. Select desired setting under Auto steering wheel heat to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated steering wheel.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel* (p. 239)
- Usage modes (p. 450)

36 Applies to certain markets
37 Usage mode Comfort

Activating auto climate control

With auto climate control activated, multiple climate functions are controlled automatically.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by swiping up on the home view.
2. Give a short or long press on AUTO.
   - Short press - air recirculation, air conditioning and air distribution are controlled automatically.
   - Long press - air recirculation, air conditioning and air distribution are controlled automatically, temperature and fan speed are changed to standard settings: 22 °C (72 °F) and level 3.

   > Auto-regulation of the climate is activated and the button illuminates.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 235)

NOTE

Temperature and fan speed can be changed without deactivating the automatically-regulated climate control system. The automatically-regulated climate control system is deactivated when the air distribution is changed manually or when maximum defroster is activated.

Activating and deactivating air recirculation

Air recirculation shuts out bad air, exhaust gases, etc. from outside the car by the climate control system reusing the air in the passenger compartment.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by swiping up on the home view.

2. Tap on the button for air recirculation.
   > Air recirculation is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 235)
- Activating and deactivating time setting for air recirculation (p. 241)

IMPORTANT

If the air in the car is recirculated for too long then there is a risk of misting on the insides of the windows.

NOTE

- It is not possible to activate air recirculation when max defroster is activated.
- If the air purification sensor detects that the outside air is contaminated, the air intake is closed and air recirculation is activated automatically.

Activating and deactivating time setting for air recirculation

Air recirculation shuts out bad air, exhaust gases, etc. from outside the car by the climate control system reusing the air in the passenger compartment.

It is possible set whether the air recirculation timer should be activated/deactivated. When the timer is activated, air recirculation is automatically switched off after 20 minutes.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by swiping up on the home view.
2. Press Settings in the climate view.
3. Select desired setting under Recirculation timer to activate/deactivate the air recirculation timer.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating air recirculation (p. 240)

Activating and deactivating max defroster

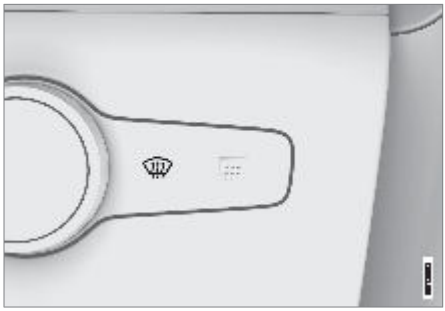
Max defroster is used to quickly remove mist and ice from windows.

Max defroster deactivates auto-regulation of the climate and air recirculation, activates air conditioning and changes the fan level to 5 and the temperature to High.

When max defroster is deactivated, the climate control system returns to the previous settings.

Activating and deactivating max defroster from centre console

There is a physical button in the centre console for quick access to max defroster.



Physical button in the centre console.

– Press the button.
  > Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Activating and deactivating max defroster from centre display

1. Open climate view in the centre display by swiping upwards on the home view.

2. Tap on the max defroster button.
   > Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button lights up/goes off. The temperatures in the various climate zones are not synchronised while max defroster is activated.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 235)
- Synchronising temperature (p. 245)

NOTE

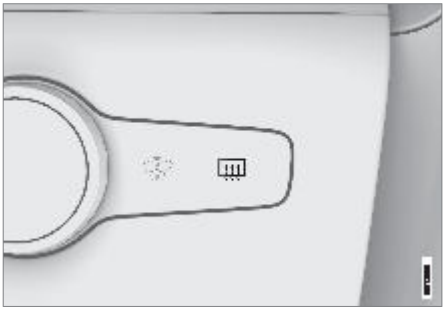
Changing the fan level to 5 increases the noise level.

Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove mist and ice from the windows and mirrors.

Activating and deactivating heated rear window and door mirrors from centre console

In the centre console is a physical button for rapid access to the heated rear window and door mirrors.



Physical button in the centre console.

– Press the button.
  > Heated rear window and door mirrors are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Activating and deactivating heated rear window and door mirrors from centre display

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by swiping up on the home view.

2. Press the button for heated rear window and door mirrors.
   > Heated rear window and door mirrors are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 235)
- Activating and deactivating automatic starting of the heated rear window and door mirrors (p. 243)

Activating and deactivating automatic starting of the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove mist and ice from the windows and mirrors.

It is possible to set whether automatic start of heated rear window and door mirrors should be activated/deactivated when the driver gets into the car.[38] With automatic start activated, heating will start when there is a risk of ice or misting on the windscreen/window. The heating switches off automatically when the windscreen/window is sufficiently warm and the ice or misting is gone.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by swiping up on the home view.
2. Press Settings in the climate view.
3. Select desired setting under Auto rear defroster to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated rear window and door mirrors.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors (p. 242)
- Usage modes (p. 450)

38 Usage mode Comfort

Regulating fan level for front seat

The fan can be set to several different automatically controlled fan speeds for the front seat.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by swiping up on the home view.
2. Tap on the desired fan level: OFF, 1-5 or MAX.
   > The fan level is changed and the selected level illuminates.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 235)

IMPORTANT

If the fan is fully switched off then the air conditioning is not engaged, which results in a risk of misting on the insides of the windows.

NOTE

The climate control system automatically adjusts the air flow within the selected fan level based on requirements. This means that the fan speed may change even though the fan level is the same.

Regulating temperature for front seat

The temperature can be set to the desired number of degrees for the front seat's climate zones.

1. Tap on the temperature button in the middle of the climate row on the centre display to open the control.[39]
2. Drag the control to the desired temperature.
   > The temperature changes and the button shows the set temperature.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 235)

NOTE

Heating or cooling cannot be hastened by selecting a higher or lower temperature than the actual desired temperature.

39 If synchronisation of the temperature has been deactivated, the current temperature is shown both on the driver and passenger side.

Synchronising temperature

The temperature in the car's different climate zones is as standard synchronised with the set temperature for the driver's side, but it is possible to deactivate synchronisation and set the temperature separately for the individual climate zones.

Deactivating synchronisation of temperature

1. Tap on the temperature button in the middle of the climate row in the centre display to open the control.

2. Tap on the synchronisation button above the temperature controls.
   > The temperature can now be set separately for the individual climate zones. Set temperature is now shown separately on the driver's and passenger side in the climate row instead of only in the middle.

Resetting synchronised temperature

1. Press the temperature button for the driver's and passenger side in the centre display's climate row in order to open the controls.

2. Tap on the synchronisation button above the temperature controls.
   > The temperature for all zones in the car is synchronised with the set temperature for the driver's side.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 235)

Activating and deactivating air conditioning

The air conditioning cools and dehumidifies incoming air as required.

When the air conditioning is activated, the climate control system automatically controls starting and switching off as required.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by swiping up on the home view.
2. Tap on the air conditioning button.

   > The air conditioning is activated/deactivated, which is indicated by a symbol at the bottom of the climate row.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 235)

NOTE

- Close all side windows for air conditioning to work optimally.
- It is not possible to activate the air conditioning when the fan control is in Off position.

Parking climate

Parking climate control is a generic term for various functions that improve the passenger compartment climate when the car is parked, e.g. preconditioning.

Open the climate view in the centre display by swiping up in the home view and tapping on Parking to access the functions.

Related information

- Climate (p. 226)
- Preconditioning (p. 246)
- Air purification* (p. 251)
- Symbols and messages for parking climate control (p. 252)

Preconditioning

Preconditioning is a climate function which, if possible, attempts to reach comfort temperature in the passenger compartment before departure.

Preconditioning can be started directly or set via timer, from the centre display or using a mobile phone.

Preconditioning can be started directly or set via timer from the centre display.

The function utilises several systems in different cases:

- In a cold climate, the parking heater warms up the passenger compartment to a comfortable temperature.
- The air conditioning, in a hot climate, cools the passenger compartment to the comfort temperature.
- Heated rear window and door mirrors are automatically activated as required.

During preconditioning in a hot climate, condensation from the air conditioning may drip under the car. This is normal.

Related information

- Parking climate (p. 246)
- Start and switch off preconditioning (p. 247)
- Time setting for preconditioning (p. 248)
- Air purification* (p. 251)

NOTE

- Preconditioning is available when the high voltage battery is sufficiently charged, but running preconditioning without the car connected to an electrical socket affects the car's range.

Start and switch off preconditioning

Preconditioning heats or cools the passenger compartment, if possible, prior to driving. The function is started directly from the centre display or a mobile phone.

Preconditioning heats or cools the passenger compartment, if possible, prior to driving. The function is started directly from the centre display.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by swiping up on the home view.
2. Press Parking.
3. Tap on Start preheating/cooling to start preconditioning directly.

Related information

- Parking climate (p. 246)
- Preconditioning (p. 246)
- Time setting for preconditioning (p. 248)
- Air purification* (p. 251)
- The 极星 app (p. 551)
- The Polestar app (p. 552)
- Range (p. 469)
- Usage modes (p. 450)

NOTE

- Preconditioning is available when the high voltage battery is sufficiently charged, but running preconditioning without the car connected to an electrical socket affects the car's range.
- The car's doors and windows should be closed during the preconditioning of the passenger compartment.
- Air purification* starts automatically when preconditioning is completed.

NOTE

- During preconditioning of the passenger compartment, the car works to reach comfort temperature and not the temperature set in the climate control system.
- Air purification* starts automatically when preconditioning is completed.

Time setting for preconditioning

NOTE

- When there is someone sitting in the driver's seat[40] preconditioning is paused and normal climate control is started. When the car starts to drive[41], preconditioning is switched off.

The timer can be set so that the preconditioning is finished at a predetermined time.

The timer can handle up to 8 different settings for time on one or more weekdays, with or without repetition.

Related information

- Preconditioning (p. 246)
- Add and edit time setting for preconditioning (p. 249)
- Activating and deactivating time setting for preconditioning (p. 250)
- Removing time setting for preconditioning (p. 250)

NOTE

Preconditioning is available when the high voltage battery is sufficiently charged, but running preconditioning without the car connected to an electrical socket affects the car's range.

40 Usage mode Comfort
41 Usage mode Drive

Add and edit time setting for preconditioning

The timer for preconditioning can manage up to 8 time settings.

Adding a time setting

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by swiping up on the home view.
2. Press Parking.
3. Press Timers.
4. Press Add timer.
5. Set the time when preconditioning should be complete, and select weekdays for preconditioning by pressing the weekdays' buttons.
6. Tick Repeat weekly in order to repeat preconditioning on the same day and time every week.
7. Tap on Set timer in order to add the time setting
   > The time setting is added to the list and is activated.

Editing a time setting

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by swiping up on the home view.
2. Press Parking.
3. Press the time setting that is to be changed.
4. Edit the time setting in the same way as described in "Adding a time setting" above.

Related information

- Preconditioning (p. 246)
- Time setting for preconditioning (p. 248)
- Activating and deactivating time setting for preconditioning (p. 250)
- Removing time setting for preconditioning (p. 250)

NOTE

It is not possible to add a time setting if there already are 8 settings entered for the timer. Delete a time setting in order to be able to add a new one.

Activating and deactivating time setting for preconditioning

A time setting in the timer for preconditioning can be activated or deactivated based on need.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by swiping up on the home view.
2. Press Parking.
3. Press Timers.
4. Activate/deactivate a time setting by ticking the box to the right of the time setting.
   > The time setting is activated/deactivated.

Related information

- Preconditioning (p. 246)
- Time setting for preconditioning (p. 248)
- Add and edit time setting for preconditioning (p. 249)
- Removing time setting for preconditioning (p. 250)

Removing time setting for preconditioning

A time setting for preconditioning that is no longer required can be deleted.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by swiping up on the home view.
2. Press Parking.
3. Press Timers.
4. Tap on the time setting you want to remove.
5. Press Delete timer.
   > The time setting is deleted.

Related information

- Preconditioning (p. 246)
- Time setting for preconditioning (p. 248)
- Add and edit time setting for preconditioning (p. 249)
- Activating and deactivating time setting for preconditioning (p. 250)

Air purification*

Air purification of the car prior to departure is used to improve the air quality in the passenger compartment.

Air purification can only be started directly from the centre display, but it also starts automatically when preconditioning ends.

This function uses the ventilation to blow fresh air into the passenger compartment and then circulates the air through the air conditioning system's passenger compartment filter.

The content of small particles ($PM_{2.5}$) can be followed in the AQI app during the air purification cycle.

The content of small particles ($PM_{2.5}$) can be followed in the Air quality app during the air purification cycle.

Related information

- Parking climate (p. 246)
- Starting and switching off air purification (p. 251)
- Preconditioning (p. 246)
- The 极星 app (p. 551)
- The Polestar app (p. 552)

Starting and switching off air purification

Air purification improves the air quality in the passenger compartment prior to driving. The function is started directly from the centre display.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by swiping up on the home view.
2. Press Parking.
3. Tap on Start air purification to start air purification directly.

Related information

- Parking climate (p. 246)
- Air purification* (p. 251)
- Preconditioning (p. 246)
- The 极星 app (p. 551)
- The Polestar app (p. 552)

NOTE

Air purification* starts automatically when preconditioning is completed.

Symbols and messages for parking climate control

A number of symbols and messages regarding parking climate control can be shown in the driver display.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Parking climate Service required	Parking climate control is disengaged. Contact Polestar Customer Support to check the function as soon as possible.
	Parking climate Temporarily unavailable	Parking climate control is temporarily disengaged. If the problem persists for some time, contact Polestar Customer Support to check the function.
	Parking climate unavailable Charge level too low	Parking climate control cannot be activated if the State of Charge (SoC) of the high voltage battery is too low to start the parking heater. Start the car.
	Limited parking climate Charge level too low	The running time for parking climate control is limited when the State of Charge (SoC) in the high voltage battery is too low. Start the car.

Related information

- Parking climate (p. 246)
- The 极星 app (p. 551)
- The Polestar app (p. 552)

Parking heater

The parking heater heats the battery and passenger compartment as necessary before driving if the car's preconditioning is activated.

The parking heater is a high voltage heater and is mounted beneath the front luggage compartment.

The parking heater starts automatically if the parking climate's preconditioning is activated and the passenger compartment needs to be heated up.

It switches off automatically when the car is started.

Battery and charging

The heater is powered by the car's high voltage battery. If the charge level of the high voltage battery is too low, then the heater is switched off automatically and the driver display shows a message.

Related information

- Activate and deactivate the heater (p. 253)

NOTE

Make sure that there is enough charge in the high voltage battery if the parking heater needs to be used.

Activate and deactivate the heater

The heater conditions the car's battery and passenger compartment. To extend the car's range, Heater OFF can be selected.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by swiping up on the home view.

2. Tap on the heater button.
   > The heater is activated/deactivated, which is indicated by a symbol at the bottom of the climate row.

Related information

- Range assistant (p. 472)
- Climate controls (p. 235)
- ECO climate control (p. 473)

NOTE

Using Heater-OFF on a battery that is already highly cooled may limit the battery's output. For example, the car's acceleration speed may be affected.

Section 09

—

Key, locks and alarm

Locking and unlocking

The car can be locked and unlocked in several different ways.

The different options are as follows:

- with the key's buttons
- keyless – requires that a key is within range
- using the keyless function with Digital Key in a phone
- from the inside of the car using the locking controls in the doors
- remote unlocking with the Polestar app
- remote unlocking with the 极星 app
- using the detachable key blade – for example, if the battery in the key is discharged
- automatic locking when the car is driven.

Related information

- Locking and unlocking settings (p. 258)
- Digital Key (p. 263)
- Contact Polestar (p. 16)
- Locking and unlocking with the key (p. 272)
- Keyless locking and unlocking of doors (p. 257)
- Locking and unlocking from inside the car (p. 266)
- Automatic locking when driving (p. 269)
- Alarm (p. 295)

NOTE

In the event of a collision, the car unlocks all of the doors for safety reasons. This only takes place if one of the safety systems has been activated.

Keyless locking and unlocking

With the keyless locking and unlocking function, just having the key with you in your pocket or bag is enough to unlock the doors and tailgate. The car is locked or unlocked by touching the door handle.

Related information

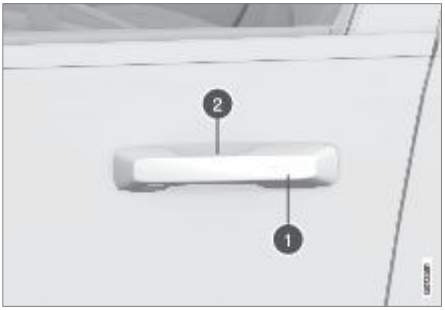
- Keyless locking and unlocking of doors (p. 257)
- Keyless tailgate unlocking (p. 258)
- Closing and locking the tailgate with the button (p. 259)
- Keyless opening and closing of the tailgate with a foot movement* (p. 261)
- Locking and unlocking settings (p. 258)

NOTE

Be aware that the system may be activated in connection with car washing if the key is in range.

Keyless locking and unlocking of doors

Keyless unlocking allows the doors to be opened by gripping the door handle.



① Touch-sensitive recess for locking.
② Touch-sensitive surface for unlocking.

– Touch the button on the handle or grip the handle.
  > The car is locked or unlocked.

Automatic relocking

If none of the doors is opened within 2 minutes of unlocking, they are locked automatically. This function prevents the car from being left unlocked unintentionally.

Related information

- Locking and unlocking settings (p. 258)
- Keyless tailgate unlocking (p. 258)
- Digital Key (p. 263)
- Keyless locking and unlocking (p. 256)

NOTE

- One of the car's keys must be within range for locking and unlocking to work.

NOTE

- Be aware that the system may be activated in connection with car washing if the key is in range.

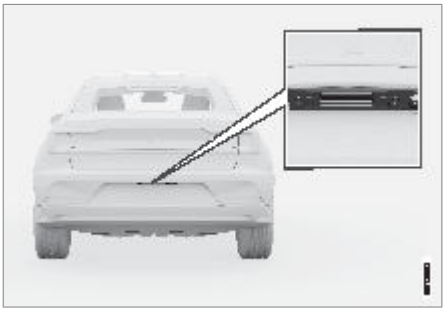
Locking and unlocking settings

Settings for locking and unlocking can be adjusted as required in the centre display.

1. Tap on in the centre display.
2. Press More.
3. Select Locking.
4. Change the preferred settings.

Keyless tailgate unlocking

Using keyless locking and unlocking, it is sufficient to press gently on the rubberised pressure plate on the tailgate's handle in order to unlock.



The handle is positioned beneath the tailgate.

– Press gently on the rubberised pressure plate beneath the tailgate's handle.
  > The tailgate is now unlocked.

Related information

- Closing and locking the tailgate with the button (p. 259)
- Keyless locking and unlocking of doors (p. 257)
- Keyless locking and unlocking (p. 256)
- Key range (p. 274)
- Keyless opening and closing of the tailgate with a foot movement* (p. 261)

Closing and locking the tailgate with the button

IMPORTANT

- Minimal force is required to release the tailgate's lock - just gently press on the rubberised panel.
- Do not place the lift force on the rubber panel when opening the tailgate - lift the handle. Using too much force may damage the electrical contacts on the rubber panel.

NOTE

One of the car's keys must be within range behind the car for unlocking to work.

The buttons on the tailgate's underside can close and lock the car automatically.

Closing

– Press the button on the underside of the tailgate.
  > The tailgate closes automatically and remains unlocked.

Closing and locking

– Press the button on the underside of the tailgate.
  > The tailgate is closed automatically and the car is locked[42].

Cancel closing

- Press the button on the instrument panel.
- Press the key's button.
- Press the closing button on the underside of the tailgate.
- Press the tailgate handle.
- Using a foot movement*.

The tailgate's movement is interrupted and stops. The tailgate can then be operated manually.

If the tailgate is stopped close to closed position, the next activation will open the tailgate.

42 All doors must be closed for locking the car.

Pinch protection

If anything offering sufficient resistance prevents the tailgate opening or closing, pinch protection is activated.

- During opening - movement is interrupted, the tailgate stops and a long acoustic signal sounds.
- When closing – the movement is interrupted, the tailgate stops, a long signal sounds and the tailgate returns to its set maximum opening.

Pre-tensioned springs

Related information

- Setting the maximum tailgate opening (p. 261)
- Keyless opening and closing of the tailgate with a foot movement* (p. 261)

WARNING

- Note the risk of crushing when opening and closing.
- Check that there is nobody near the tailgate before starting to open or close it as a crush injury may have severe consequences.
- Always operate the tailgate with caution.

- Do not open the pretensioned springs. They are pretensioned to a high pressure and may cause injury if opened.

NOTE

- During manual tailgate operation, open or close it slowly. Do not use force to open/close it if there is resistance. The tailgate may be damaged and stop working correctly.

- The button is active 24 hours after the hatch has been left open. Thereafter, it must be closed manually.
- If the flap has been open for more than 30 minutes, it will close at a slow speed.

- One of the car's keys must be within range for locking and unlocking to work.
- When locking or closing, three signals will sound if the key is not detected sufficiently close to the tailgate.

Setting the maximum tailgate opening

Adjust the max opening of the tailgate, e.g. to make it easier if the car is in a garage with limited space.

Setting maximum opening

1. Open the tailgate - and stop it in the desired opening position.
2. Press and hold down the button on the underside of the tailgate for approximately 3 seconds.
   > Two acoustic signals sound to indicate that the set position has been saved.

Resetting maximum opening

1. Open the tailgate to the fully open position.
2. Press and hold down the button on the underside of the tailgate for approximately 3 seconds.
   > Two acoustic signals sound to indicate that the set position has been cleared.

Related information

- Closing and locking the tailgate with the button (p. 259)

NOTE

- It is not possible to set a lower opening position than a half-open tailgate.
- If the system has worked constantly for too long, it will switch off in order to prevent overloading. It can be used again after approx. 2 minutes.

Keyless opening and closing of the tailgate with a foot movement*

The tailgate can be opened and closed by moving a foot under the bumper, which makes life easier when your hands are full.

The sensor is located under the centre of the rear bumper.

One of the car's keys must be within range behind the car, approx. 1 metre (3 feet), for opening to be possible. This also applies to an already unlocked car in order to avoid accidental opening e.g. in a car wash.

Opening and closing with foot movement

Kicking motion within the detector's activation area.

1. Make one forward kicking motion under the centre of the rear bumper.

2. Take one step back, the bumper must not be touched.
   > A short acoustic signal sounds when opening or closing is activated - the tailgate is opened/closed.

If several kicking motions take place without an approved key behind the car, opening will not be possible until after a certain delay.

Do not keep your foot in the kicking motion below the car, as this can cause activation to fail.

Cancelling opening or closing with foot movement

– Make one forward kicking motion while opening or closing is in progress in order to stop the movement of the tailgate.

The key does not need to be in the vicinity of the car to cancel opening or closing of the tailgate.

If the tailgate is stopped close to closed position, the next activation will open the tailgate.

Related information

- Keyless locking and unlocking (p. 256)
- Key range (p. 274)

NOTE

- One of the car's keys must be within range for locking and unlocking to work.
- There is a risk of reduced function, or no function, if the left rear wing is loaded with large amounts of ice, snow, dirt or similar. For this reason, make sure you keep it clean.

NOTE

- Pay attention to the possibility that the system may be activated in a car wash or similar if the key is within range.

Digital Key

With the Digital Key function installed, a phone can be used as a key.

The key functions available with Digital Key are locking, unlocking, and starting the car.

To use the phone[43] as a key, Digital Key must be activated in the Polestar app. The digital key is coupled to the user's Polestar ID.

To use the phone[44] as a key, Digital Key must be activated in the 极星 app. The digital key is coupled to the user's Polestar ID.

Activate Digital Key

The Polestar app is available for iOS and Android. Download it for free from the Apple Appstore or Google Play.

Ensure that the phone has connected to the car before Digital Key is enabled.

1. Log in to the app with your Polestar ID.
2. Activate Digital Key via settings in the app.

Activate Digital Key

The 极星 app is available for iOS and Android. Download it for free from the Apple Appstore or the Baidu App Store.

Ensure that the phone has connected to the car before Digital Key is enabled.

1. Log in to the app with your Polestar ID.
2. Activate Digital Key via settings in the app.

Related information

- Using Digital Key (p. 264)
- The 极星 app (p. 551)
- The Polestar app (p. 552)
- Polestar ID (p. 16)
- Connecting a phone to the car (p. 523)
- Type designations for start and lock system (p. 283)
- Type approval for the key system (p. 285)

43 Digital Key requires a phone equipped with Bluetooth version 4.2 or later.
44 Digital Key requires a phone equipped with Bluetooth version 4.2 or later.

Using Digital Key

With Digital Key, the car can be locked and unlocked keylessly or using the Polestar app. The car can also be started and used as normal when it recognises a phone with Digital Key.

With Digital Key, the car can be locked and unlocked keylessly or using the 极星 app. The car can also be started and used as normal when it recognises a phone with Digital Key.

To use the phone as a key, the Digital Key function must have been activated in the Polestar app.

To use the phone as a key, the Digital Key function must have been activated in the 极星 app.

Locking and unlocking with Digital Key

The car detects Digital Key when you are within an arm's length of the doors or tailgate with the phone.

Keyless unlocking and locking work in the same way as with a normal key. Grip the handle and wait until the car is unlocked; or touch the touch sensitive recess on the handle in order to lock the car.

You can also open the tailgate using a foot movement* when a phone with Digital Key installed is within range.

Starting the car using Digital Key

The car is started as usual when a phone with Digital Key installed is inside the passenger compartment.

Digital Key troubleshooting

If it is not possible to unlock or lock the car using the keyless function with Digital Key:

- Hold the phone in your hand aimed at the car and try again. The signal from the phone may be blocked or disrupted by other objects, e.g. if it is stored in a bag or close to metal objects or other electronics.
- Try to unlock or lock the car using the buttons in the app.

If it is not possible to start the car with Digital Key:

- Place the phone adjacent to or on the wireless charging pad where it will have very good conditions for connection. The signal from the phone may be blocked or disrupted by other objects, e.g. if it is stored in a bag or close to metal objects or other electronics.

General Digital Key troubleshooting:

- Check that Bluetooth is activated and that the phone is connected to the car.
- Make sure the app has access to requested phone features, such as location services.
- Check that the app is not closed or restricted in the phone due to battery saver settings, for example.
- Check that the Digital Key function has not been deactivated in the app's settings.
- Try disconnecting the Wi-Fi temporarily, as some networks may disrupt the authentication of the digital key.
- Restart the app or the phone.
- Check whether there is a newer version of the app and update it if possible.
- If the problem persists - contact Polestar Customer Support.

Related information

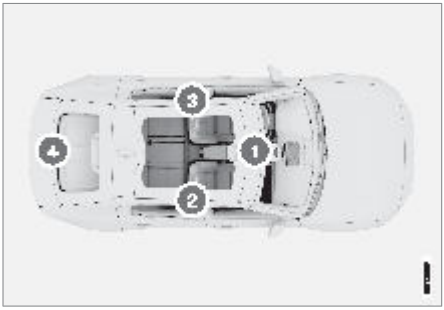
- Digital Key (p. 263)
- Keyless locking and unlocking of doors (p. 257)
- Keyless tailgate unlocking (p. 258)
- Keyless opening and closing of the tailgate with a foot movement* (p. 261)
- Starting the car (p. 448)

Antenna locations for the start and lock systems

NOTE

If the phone has discharged, the Digital Key functions are not available. Charge the phone or use a conventional key instead.

Antennas for the keyless start and lock systems are built into the car.



Antenna location for Digital Key:

1. In the lower part of the tunnel console on the passenger side

Antenna location for the keyless system:

1. In the storage compartment in the tunnel console
2. In the upper front section of the left-hand rear door
3. In the upper front section of the right-hand rear door
4. In the cargo area

Related information

- Keyless locking and unlocking (p. 256)
- Digital Key (p. 263)
- Key range (p. 274)

Locking and unlocking from inside the car

WARNING

People with an implanted pacemaker should not get closer than 22 cm (9 inches) to the lock systems' aerials with their pacemaker. This is to prevent interference between the pacemaker and the lock systems.

The doors and tailgate can be locked and unlocked from inside using the central locking controls in the driver's door.

Depending on the settings in the key, either all doors or only the selected door will be unlocked.

Front doors

Locking and unlocking button with indicator lamp in the driver's door.

Locking

– Tap on the button – all doors must be closed.
  > All doors and the tailgate are locked.

Unlocking[45]

– Tap on the button.
  > All doors and the tailgate are unlocked.

45 Depending on the settings in the key, either all doors or only the selected door will be unlocked.

Rear doors

Locking

The door must be closed to allow locking.

– Tap on the button.
  > The doors are locked.

Unlocking[45]

Alternative unlocking using the door handles.

1. Pull the door handle.
   > The door is unlocked [46].
2. Pull the door handle.
   > The door is unlocked[47].
3. Pull on the door handle once more.
   > The door opens.

Related information

- Locking and unlocking settings (p. 258)
- Unlocking the tailgate from the inside of the car (p. 267)
- Activating and deactivating the child lock (p. 268)

Unlocking the tailgate from the inside of the car

The tailgate can be unlocked from inside the car using a button beside the steering wheel on the instrument panel.

– Brief press on the button on the instrument panel.
  > The tailgate is unlocked and can be opened from outside using the handle under the tailgate.

– Long press on the button on the instrument panel.
  > The tailgate is opened.

Related information

- Locking and unlocking from inside the car (p. 266)

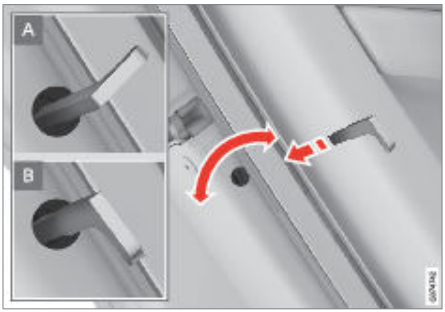
46 As long as the child lock is not activated.
47 As long as the child lock is not activated.

Activating and deactivating the child lock

The child lock prevents the rear doors being opened from inside.

The child lock can either be manual or electrical*.

Manual child lock



Manual child lock. Which must not be mixed up with manual door lock.

– Use the key's detachable key blade to turn the knob.

The door is blocked against opening from the inside.

The door can be opened both from outside and from inside.

Electric child lock*

Button for activation and deactivation.

- Lamp illuminated – the lock is activated.
- Lamp extinguished – the lock is deactivated.

When the child lock is activated, the rear

- windows can only be opened using the buttons in the driver's door
- doors cannot be opened from the inside.

If the child lock is activated when the car is switched off, the function will continue to be activated the next time the car is started.

Symbols and messages

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Rear child lock activated	The child lock is activated.
	Rear child lock deactivated	The child lock is deactivated.

Related information

- Locking and unlocking from inside the car (p. 266)
- Detachable key blade (p. 280)

NOTE

- The knob control on a door only blocks that particular door - not both rear doors simultaneously.
- Cars with an electric child safety lock do not have a manual child lock.

Automatic locking when driving

When the car starts to drive, the doors and tailgate are locked automatically for safety reasons.

The doors can still be opened from the inside during automatic locking while driving. Either all doors are unlocked, or just the door being opened, depending on the lock settings.

Automatic locking when driving can be deactivated through the settings in the centre display.

Related information

- Locking and unlocking from inside the car (p. 266)
- Activating and deactivating the child lock (p. 268)

NOTE

- You will need to use the child lock to prevent a rear door from being opened from inside the car.
- In the event of a collision, the car unlocks all of the doors for safety reasons. This only takes place if one of the safety systems has been activated.

Keys

The car has two types of physical keys – the standard key and the key tag.

The standard key and the button-less key (Key Tag).

The keyless start function means that it is sufficient for a key to be inside the car in order to start it.

Keys can be linked to different user profiles with personal preferences.

Standard key buttons

The key has four buttons - one on the left-hand side and three on the right-hand side.

Locking – A button press locks the doors and the tailgate while also activating the alarm at the same time[48].

A longer button press closes all windows.

Unlocking – A button press unlocks the doors and tailgate while also deactivating the alarm at the same time.

A longer button press opens all windows in order to air the car quickly in hot weather, for example.

Tailgate – A button press unlocks the tailgate while also deactivating the alarm at the same time.

A longer button press opens the tailgate. The tailgate is also closed with a longer button press – acoustic warning signals sound.

Panic function – Used to attract attention in an emergency. Press and hold the button for at least 3 seconds or press it twice within 3 seconds to activate the car's direction indicators and the horn. The function can be turned off with the same button once it has been active for at least 5 seconds. Otherwise the function switches off automatically after 3 minutes.

Panic function – Used to attract attention in an emergency. Press and hold the button for at least 3 seconds or press it twice within 3 seconds to activate the car's direction indicators. The function can be turned off with the same button once it has been active for at least 5 seconds. Otherwise the function switches off automatically after 3 minutes.

48 Alarm function not available for Israel.

Button-less key (Key Tag)

The key tag can be used for starting the car and keyless locking and locking in the same way as the standard key. The key is waterproof to a depth of approx. 10 metres (30 feet) for up to 60 minutes. It does not have an fold-out key blade, and the battery is not replaceable.

Interference

Key functions for keyless starting and keyless locking and unlocking can be disrupted by electromagnetic fields and screening.

If interference occurs, use the detachable key blade of the standard key for unlocking. Then place the key in the backup in the tunnel console storage compartment to disable the alarm and be able to start the car.

If interference occurs, use the detachable key blade of the standard key for unlocking. Then place the key in the backup reader in the tunnel console storage compartment to be able to start the car.

Related information

- Replacing the battery in the key (p. 275)
- Detachable key blade (p. 280)
- User profiles (p. 163)
- Immobiliser (p. 282)
- Key range (p. 274)
- Connect key to user profile (p. 167)

WARNING

- If anyone is left in the car, make sure the power windows are de-energised by always taking the key with you when you leave the car.

WARNING

- California Proposition 65

  When you use or perform service or maintenance on a passenger vehicle, you may be exposed to chemicals, including exhaust gases, carbon monoxide, phthalates and lead, which are known in the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects or other reproductive harm. Minimise the exposure by avoiding the inhalation of exhaust gases, not running at idling speed more than necessary, servicing the vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wearing gloves or washing your hands frequently when you service the vehicle. More information is available at www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

NOTE

- A key that has been locked in the car is temporarily deactivated and cannot be used before the car has been unlocked using another valid key.

  The double lock function* is also deactivated.

- Avoid storing the key close to metal objects or electronic apparatus, e.g. phones, tablets, laptops or chargers - preferably no closer than 10-15 cm (4-6 inches).

Locking and unlocking with the key

NOTE

- When the key is being read by the backup reader, make sure the storage compartment is clear of other nearby car keys, metal objects or electronics (e.g. mobile phones, tablets, laptops or chargers). These objects may interfere with the function.

The buttons on the key can be used to lock and unlock all doors and the tailgate simultaneously.

Locking with the key

– Press the key button to lock the car.

All doors must be locked to be able to activate the lock sequence. If any of the doors or the tailgate is open, these will only be locked and alarmed when they are closed. The alarm's movement detectors are activated when the doors and the tailgate are closed and locked.

All doors must be locked to be able to activate the lock sequence. If any of the doors or the tailgate is open, these will only be locked and alarmed when they are closed.

All doors must be locked to be able to activate the lock sequence. If any of the doors or the tailgate is open, these will only be locked when they are closed.

Locking when the tailgate is open

Unlocking with the key

– Press the key button to unlock the car.

Automatic relocking

If none of the doors or the tailgate is opened within 2 minutes of unlocking, they are locked

automatically. This function prevents the car from being left unlocked unintentionally.

When the key does not work

If it is not possible to lock or unlock with the key, the battery may be discharged - in which case, lock or unlock the driver's door with the detachable key blade.

Related information

- Unlocking the tailgate with a key (p. 273)
- Keys (p. 270)
- Replacing the battery in the key (p. 275)
- Locking and unlocking with the detachable key blade (p. 281)

NOTE

- A key that has been locked in the car is temporarily deactivated and cannot be used before the car has been unlocked using another valid key.

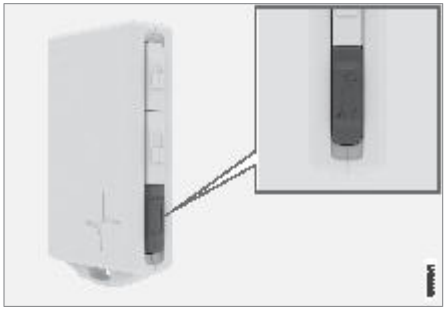
  The double lock function* is also deactivated.

- Avoid leaving the car key in the cargo area. If the key is detected in the cargo when the tailgate is closed after locking, the tailgate will not be locked.

- Always try moving closer to the car and making another unlock attempt.

Unlocking the tailgate with a key

It is possible to unlock just the tailgate using a button on the key.



– Brief press on the button on the key.
  > The tailgate is unlocked but remains closed.

The side doors are still locked and the alarm is armed. The lock and alarm indicator on the instrument panel extinguishes in order to show that the entire car is not locked.

The side doors remain locked. The lock indicator on the instrument panel extinguishes in order to show that the entire car is not locked.

If the tailgate is not opened within approximately 2 minutes then it is relocked and the alarm is re-armed.

If the tailgate is not opened within approximately 2 minutes then it is relocked.

– Long press on the button on the key.
  > The tailgate is unlocked and opened, while the side doors remain locked and their alarm functions armed.

– Long press on the button on the key.
  > The tailgate is unlocked and opened, while the side doors remain locked.

Key range

Related information

- Keys (p. 270)

The car's physical keys work within a certain distance from the car.

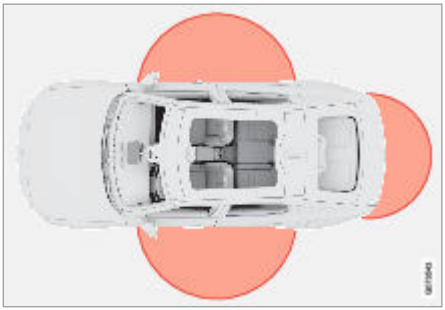
The range differs for different key functions. The car has multiple antennas and sensor areas to detect if a key is in or near the car, or if the standard key buttons are used.

Range for key button functions

The button functions of the standard key have a range of approx. 20 metres (65 feet) from the car.

If the car does not respond to a button press – try again closer to the car.

Range for keyless use



The sensor areas of the keyless system.

For keyless use, a key must be near the car. The sensor areas have a radius of approx. 1.5 metres (5 feet) on the long sides and approx. 1 metre (3 feet) at the tailgate.

If the key is removed from the car

If the key is removed from the car when it is running, the warning message Car key not detected See Manual is shown in the driver display and an acoustic reminder sounds if all doors are closed.

Replacing the battery in the key

When the key is back in the car, the message disappears when all doors have been closed or the O button on the steering wheel is pressed.

Related information

- Keys (p. 270)
- Antenna locations for the start and lock systems (p. 265)
- Keyless locking and unlocking (p. 256)

NOTE

The key functions may be disrupted by surrounding radio waves, buildings, topographical conditions, etc. The car can always be locked or unlocked using the key blade.

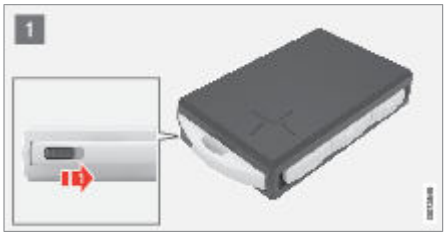
The battery in the key needs to be replaced when it has become discharged.

The battery for the key should be replaced if

- the information symbol illuminates and the message Car key battery low See Manual is shown in the driver display
- the locks repeatedly do not react to signals from the key within 20 metres (65 feet) of the car.

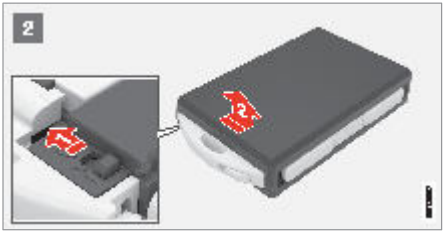
The battery in the Key Tag cannot be replaced – contact Polestar Customer Support.

Opening the key and changing the battery



1 Hold the key with the front visible and the Polestar logo facing the right way – slide the button by the key ring to the right. Slide the front side's shell a few millimetres upwards.

2 The shell will then come free and can be lifted off the key.



2 1 Turn the key, move the button to the side and slide the back shell a few millimetres upwards.

2 The shell will then come free and can be lifted off the key.

3 Use a screwdriver or similar to turn the battery cover anticlockwise until the markings meet at the OPEN text.

Carefully lift away the battery cover by pressing e.g. a fingernail down into the recess.

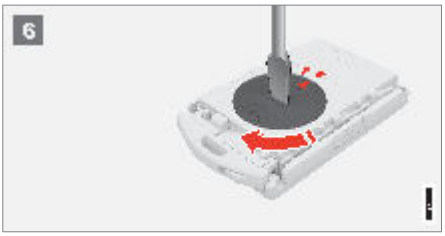
Then prize the battery cover upwards.

4 The battery (+) side is facing upwards. Then carefully prize loose the battery as illustrated.

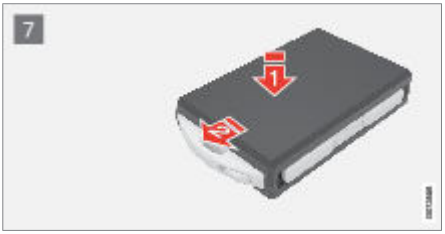
5 Install a new battery with the (+) side up. Avoid touching the key's battery contacts with your fingers.

1 Place the battery in the holder with the edge down. Then slide the battery forwards so that it fastens under the two plastic catches.

2 Press the battery down so that it fastens under the upper black plastic catch.



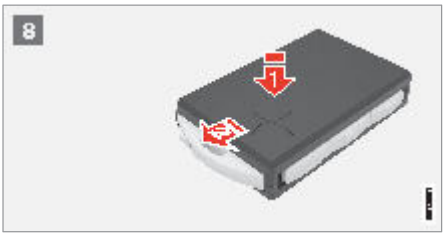
6 Refit the battery cover and turn it clockwise until the marking aligns with the CLOSE text.



7 1 Reposition the rear side's shell and press it down until a clicking sound can be heard.

2 Then slide the shell back.

> A further click will indicate that the shell is properly positioned and securely attached.



8 1 Turn the key over and refit the front side's shell by pressing it down until a clicking sound can be heard.

2 Then slide the shell back.

> A further click will indicate that the shell is securely attached.

Related information

- Keys (p. 270)

WARNING

- Check that the battery is positioned correctly, with the correct polarity. If the key is not to be used for any length of time, remove the battery to prevent it leaking and causing damage. Batteries that are leaking or damaged may cause chemical burns on contact with the skin, so wear protective gloves when handling damaged batteries.
  - Keep batteries out of the reach of children.
  - Do not leave batteries lying around in places where they could be swallowed by children or pets.
  - Batteries must not be dismantled, short-circuited or thrown into naked flames.
  - Do not charge non-rechargeable batteries as this may cause an explosion.

  Check that there is no damage to the key before use. If damage is detected – being unable to close the battery cover properly, for example – the product should not be used. Keep defective products out of the reach of children.

WARNING

- California Proposition 65

  When you use or perform service or maintenance on a passenger vehicle, you may be exposed to chemicals, including exhaust gases, carbon monoxide, phthalates and lead, which are known in the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects or other reproductive harm. Minimise the exposure by avoiding the inhalation of exhaust gases, not running at idling speed more than necessary, servicing the vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wearing gloves or washing your hands frequently when you service the vehicle. More information is available at www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

IMPORTANT

- Contact Polestar Customer Support upon expiry (Key Tag). The key has to be deleted from the car as it can still be used for backup starting.
- Avoid touching new batteries and their contact surfaces with your fingers as this may impair their function.
- Make sure that exhausted batteries are disposed of in a manner which is kind to the environment.

Ordering additional keys

NOTE

- All batteries have a limited service life and must eventually be replaced. The service life of the battery varies depending on how often the vehicle/key is used.
- Always try moving closer to the car and making another unlock attempt.
- Use batteries with the designation CR2032, 3 V.
- Polestar recommends that the batteries to be used in the key fulfil UN Manual of Test and Criteria, Part III, subsection 38.3. Contact Polestar Customer Support for replacement of factory-fitted batteries.

New keys can be ordered if more keys than the number included as standard are required, or if one has been lost.

A total of six physical keys can be programmed and used for one single car. If additional keys are ordered, additional user profiles are added – one per new key.

If you lose a key

Contact Polestar Customer Support if you lose a key. The code of the missing key must be erased from the system as a theft prevention measure. Take the remaining keys with you to the workshop if a key shall be removed from the system or if a new key shall be added.

Related information

- Keys (p. 270)

NOTE

Polestar recommends ordering or copying a new key via Polestar Customer Support.

You can also obtain additional or duplicate keys from certain independent repair facilities and locksmiths that are qualified to make keys. Each key must be programmed to work with your vehicle. A list of independent repair facilities and/or locksmiths known to Polestar that can cut and code replacement keys can be found:

- on Polestar's website polestar.com/polestar-support
- by contacting Polestar Customer Support.

Detachable key blade

The key contains a detachable key blade of metal with which a number of functions can be activated and some operations carried out.

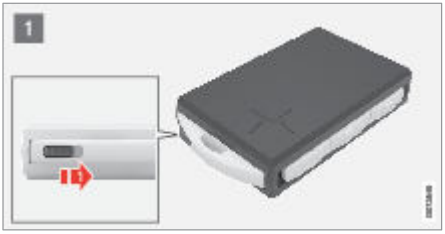
Contact Polestar Customer Support when ordering new key blades.

The key blade's application areas

Using the key's detachable key blade, the following are possible:

- the driver's door can be opened manually if central locking cannot be activated with the standard key
- the doors are emergency-locked.

Detaching the key blade



1 Hold the key with the front visible and the Polestar logo facing the right way – slide the button at bottom edge by the key ring to the right. Guide the front side's shell a few millimetres upwards.

The shell will then come free and can be lifted off the key.

2 Detach the key blade by angling it up.

3 Return the key blade to its intended position in the key after use.

Refit the shell by pressing it downward until a clicking sound is heard.

Then slide the shell back.

> A further click will indicate that the shell is securely attached.

Related information

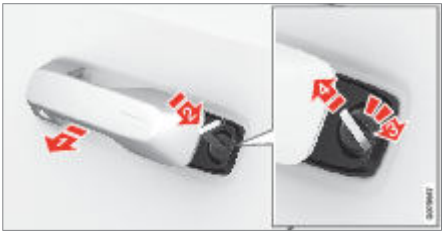
- Locking and unlocking with the detachable key blade (p. 281)
- Keys (p. 270)

Locking and unlocking with the detachable key blade

The removable key blade can be used to unlock the car from the outside – if there is no power to your car or the key battery is discharged, for example.

Unlocking

The alarm is triggered when the car is unlocked with the key blade.

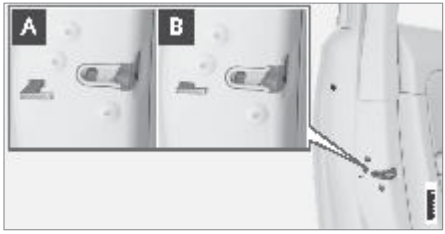


1. Pull out the front door handle on the left-hand side to its end position so that the lock cylinder become visible.
2. Insert the key in the lock cylinder.
3. Turn clockwise 45 degrees so that the key blade is pointing straight back.
4. Turn the key back 45 degrees to its starting position. Remove the key from the lock cylinder and release the handle so that the rear section of the handle is resting against the car again.
5. Pull out the handle.
   > The door opens.

Locking

The doors have a lock switch at the end which must be depressed using the key blade – these are then mechanically locked/blocked to prevent them being opened from outside.

The doors can still be opened from the inside.



Manual locking of the door.

– Remove the detachable key blade from the key. Insert the key blade in the hole for lock reset and press the key in until it bottoms, approx. 12 mm (0.5 inches).

A The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.

B The door is blocked against opening from the outside. To return to position A, the inner door handle must be opened.

Related information

- Detachable key blade (p. 280)
- Activating and deactivating alarms (p. 296)
- Replacing the battery in the key (p. 275)
- Keys (p. 270)

NOTE

- When the door is unlocked using the key blade and is then opened, the alarm is triggered.

Immobiliser

NOTE

- • A door's lock reset only locks that particular door - not all doors simultaneously.
  - A manually locked rear door with child lock activated cannot be opened from inside or outside. The door can be unlocked with the key's buttons, central locking button, or the Polestar app.
  - A manually locked rear door with child lock activated cannot be opened from inside or outside. The door can be unlocked with the key's buttons or with the central locking button.

The electronic immobiliser is a theft protection system that prevents an unauthorised person from starting the car.

The car can only be started with the correct key.

The following error message in the driver display is related to the electronic immobiliser:

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Car key not detected See Manual	Error reading the key during starting - place the key on the key symbol in the cup holder and try again.

Related information

- Keys (p. 270)
- Ordering additional keys (p. 279)

Type designations for start and lock system

The following information contains type designations for the start and lock system.

Alarm system

USA

FCC ID: MAYDA 5823(3)

This device complies with FCC rules part 15. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference that may be received including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Canada

IC: 4405A-DA 5823(3)

This device complies with the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference that may be received including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Keys

USA

Polestar standard key FCC ID: YGO-HUF8423MS

Polestar Tag ID FCC ID: YGOHUF8432MS

This device complies with FCC rules part 15. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This unit must not cause dangerous Interference and

(2) this unit must be able to withstand any received Interference, including interference that can cause unwanted functions.

Any changes or modifications that have not been expressly approved by the party responsible for conformity may invalidate the user's right to use this equipment.

Canada

Polestar standard key IC: 4008C-HUF8423MS

Polestar Tag ID-IC: 4008C-HUF8432MS

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standards. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference that may be received including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Immobiliser and system for passive opening/ passive start

USA

FCC ID: LTQVO3134

This device complies with FCC rules part 15. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This unit must not cause dangerous Interference and

(2) this unit must be able to withstand any received Interference, including interference that can cause unwanted functions.

Any changes or modifications that have not been expressly approved by the party responsible for conformity may invalidate the user's right to use this equipment.

Canada

IC:3659A-VO3134

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standards. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference that may be received including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Digital Key

USA

FCC ID: HYQS2NF0

This device complies with FCC rules part 15. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This unit must not cause dangerous Interference and

(2) this unit must be able to withstand any received Interference, including interference that can cause unwanted functions.

FCC WARNING

Any changes or modifications that have not been expressly approved by the party responsible for conformity may invalidate the user's right to use this equipment.

CAUTION: Radio Frequency Radiation Exposure

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines. This equipment must be installed and used at a distance of at least 20 cm or more from the body.

Co-location: This transmitter may not be installed or used together with any other aerial or transmitter.

Canada

IC: 1551A-S2NF0

This device contains licence-exempt transmitter(s)/receiver(s) that comply with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This unit must not cause dangerous interference.

(2) this unit must be able to withstand any received Interference, including interference that can cause unwanted functions.

The aerials must not be removed (or modified) by the user.

Co-location: This transmitter may not be installed or used together with any other aerial or transmitter.

CAUTION: Radio Frequency Radiation Exposure

This equipment complies with IC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets the RSS-102 in IC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines. This equipment must be installed and used at a distance of at least 20 cm or more from the body.

Related information

- Keys (p. 270)
- Digital Key (p. 263)

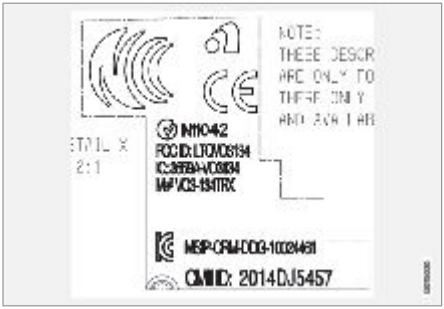
Type approval for the key system

Type approval for the car's various key systems can be seen in the following tables.

For detailed information on type approval, go to polestar.com

For information on certificates for radio frequency, go to polestar.com.

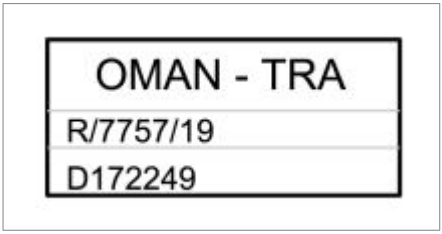
Lock system keyless start (Passive Start) and keyless locking/unlocking (Passive Entry)



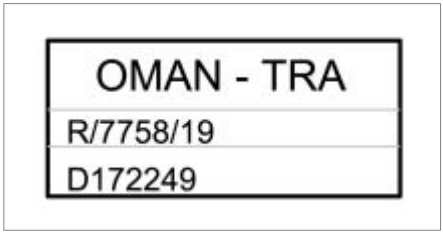
CEM label for the key system. For supplementary type approval numbers, see following tables.

Country/ Area	Type approval
Europe	APTIV Services Deutschland GmbH, hereby declares that this VO3-134TRX conforms to the essential property requirements and other relevant provisions contained in directive 2014/53/EU. APTIV Services Deutschland GmbH, hereby declares that this CV1-134TRX conforms to the essential property requirements and other relevant provisions contained in directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity can be found at polestar.com Manufacturer: APTIV Services Deutschland GmbH, Am Technologiepark 1, D-42119 Wuppertal, Germany
The United Arab Emirates	ER37847/15 DA0062437/11

Key

Country/ Area	Type approval	
Europe	Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG hereby declares that this type of radio equipment HUF8423MS conforms to directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity can be found at polestar.com Wavelength: 433.92 MHz Maximum radiated transmission power: 10 mW Manufacturer: Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG, Steeger Str. 17, 42551 Velbert, Germany	
The United Arab Emirates		
Oman		
Singapore	Complies with IMDA Standards DA103787	

Button-less key (Key Tag)

Country/ Area	Type approval	
Europe	Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG hereby declares that this type of radio equipment HUF8432MS conforms to directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity can be found at polestar.com. Wavelength: 433.92 MHz Maximum radiated transmission power: 10 mW Manufacturer: Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG, Steeger Str. 17, 42551 Velbert, Germany	
The United Arab Emirates		
Oman		
Singapore	Complies with IMDA Standards DA103787	

Digital Key

Country/Area	Type approval	
Europe	Receiver Model: R2NR0/R2NY0/R2NP0/S2NF0 Transmitter Model: S2NF0 Wavelength: 2402 to 2480 MHz Maximum radiated transmission power: 100 mW or less Manufacturer: DENSO CORPORATION Address: 1-1, Showa-cho, Kariya-shi, Aichi-ken, 448-8661 Japan DENSO CORPORATION hereby declares that this type of radio equipment complies with directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity can be found at the following web address: www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc	
UK	Receiver Model: R2NR0/R2NY0/R2NP0/S2NF0 Transmitter Model: S2NF0 Operation frequency: 2402 to 2480 MHz Maximum output power: 100 mW or less Manufacturer: DENSO CORPORATION Address: 1-1, Showa-cho, Kariya-shi, Aichi-ken, 448-8661 Japan Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that the radio equipment type is in compliance with the relevant statutory requirements. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc	UK CA

Country/Area	Type approval	
Japan	本機は電波法の認証に適合しています。 必ず以下の事をお守りください。 不用意に分解しないでください。 分解、改造したものを使用することは法律で禁止されています。 必ず日本国内でご使用ください。	
China	蓝牙设备的规格 频率范围：2400 – 2483.5 MHz 频率容限：≤20 ppm 发射功率：≤20 dBm (EIRP) 占用带宽：≤2 MHz 杂散辐射等其他技术指标请参照信部无【2002】353 号文件 不得擅自更改发射频率、加大发射功率(包括额外加装射频功率放大器)，不得擅自外接天线或改用其它发射天线； 使用时不得对各种合法的无线电通信业务产生有害干扰；一旦发现有干扰现象时，应立即停止使用，并采取措施消除干扰后方可继续使用； 使用微功率无线电设备，必须忍受各种无线电业务的干扰或工业、科学及医疗应用设备的辐射干扰； 不得在飞机和机场附近使用。	

Country/Area	Type approval	
South Korea	상표명/제조자: DENSO CORPORATION 기자재의명칭(모델명): 무선데이터통신시스템용무선기기(S2NF0) 제조년월/제조국: See product. 식별부호: R-RDKR-S2NF0	

Country/Area	Type approval	
The United Arab Emirates	NOTICE This equipment has been registered with the Telecommunications Regulatory Authority for use in the UAE. TRA REGISTERED No: ER96561/21 DEALER No: 0019826/09 DENSO R2NR0 TRA REGISTERED No: ER96302/21 DEALER No: 0019826/09 DENSO R2NY0 TRA REGISTERED No: ER96519/21 DEALER No: 0019826/09 DENSO R2NP0 TRA REGISTERED No: ER96184/21 DEALER No: 0019826/09	

Country/Area	Type approval	
	DENSO S2NF0	

Related information

- Keys (p. 270)
- Digital Key (p. 263)

Lock confirmation

The car indicates with hazard warning flashers when the car is locked or unlocked.

Exterior indication

Locking

- The car's hazard warning flashers indicate locking by flashing and retracting the door mirrors.

Unlocking

- The car's hazard warning flashers indicate unlocking by two flashes and extending the door mirrors.

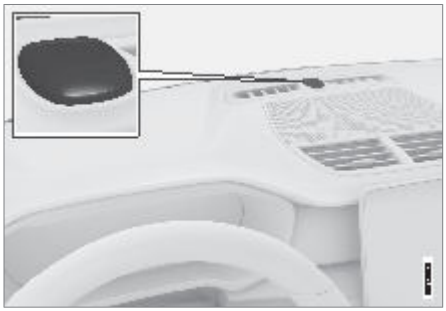
All doors, the tailgate and bonnet must be closed to indicate the car is locked.

Lock and alarm indicator on the instrument panel

The lock and alarm indicator shows the status of the locking system:

- A long flash indicates locking.
- Short flashes indicate that the car is locked.
- Rapid flashes after disarming the alarm indicate that the alarm has been triggered.

Lock indicator on the instrument panel



The lock indicator shows the status of the lock system:

- A long flash indicates locking.
- Short flashes indicate that the car is locked.

Front door

An illuminated indicator lamp in the lock button of either front door indicates that all doors are locked. If any door is opened, the lamp will extinguish in both doors.

Double lock*

Rear door

An illuminated indicator lamp in the lock button for one of the doors indicates that the door in question is locked. If any door is unlocked, its lamp will extinguish while the others will continue to illuminate.

Other indication

The home safe lighting and welcome light functions can also be activated when locking and unlocking.

Related information

- Locking and unlocking settings (p. 258)
- Locking and unlocking (p. 256)
- Welcome light and Farewell light (p. 192)
- Using the guidance light (p. 192)

Double lock means that all opening handles are released mechanically when locking from the outside, which makes it impossible to open the doors from the inside.

Double lock is activated when locking with a key or with keyless locking and takes place with a delay of approx. 10 seconds after the doors have locked. If a door is opened within the delay time then the sequence is interrupted and the alarm is deactivated.

Double lock is activated when locking with a key or with keyless locking and takes place with a delay of approx. 10 seconds after the doors have locked. If a door is opened within the delay time then the sequence is interrupted.

The car can only be unlocked with a key, keyless unlocking or the Polestar app when double lock is activated.

The driver's door can also be unlocked with the detachable key blade. If the car is unlocked with the detachable key blade, the alarm will be triggered.

The driver's door can also be unlocked with the detachable key blade.

Related information

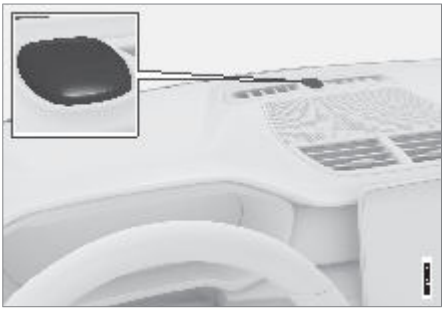
- Alarm (p. 295)

WARNING

Do not lock the car from the outside while there is anyone left in the car.

Alarm

The alarm warns with acoustic and light signals if someone without a valid key enters the car, tries to steal a tyre or tow the car away, or tampers with the car battery or the siren.



Alarm indicator

A red LED on the instrument panel indicates the alarm system's status:

- LED not lit – alarm not armed.
- The LED flashes once every other second – alarm is armed.
- The LED flashes quickly after the car has been unlocked – the alarm has been triggered.

When armed, the alarm is triggered if:

- a door, the bonnet or the tailgate is opened
- a movement is detected in the passenger compartment
- the car is lifted or towed away
- the siren is disconnected.

Alarm signals

When the alarm has been triggered, the following happens:

- A siren sounds for 30 seconds or until the alarm is switched off.
- Hazard warning flashers flash for 5 minutes or until the alarm is switched off.

If the cause of alarm activation is not rectified, the alarm cycle is repeated up to 10 times[49].

Movement and tilt detectors

The alarm's movement detector reacts to movements inside the car[50], while the tilt detector reacts to changes in the car's inclination. Reduced alarm level can be activated so that the alarm is not triggered due to movement if the car is transported on a ferry, for example.

To avoid triggering the alarm unintentionally:

- Close all windows when leaving the car.
- If the climate control is used – aim the airflow so that it does not point upwards in the passenger compartment.

It is also possible to reduce the alarm level in the centre display.

Symbols and messages

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Alarm system failure Service required	A fault has arisen in the alarm system, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating alarms (p. 296)
- Reduced alarm level (p. 297)

49 Applies to certain markets.
50 Airflow from the climate control system may be perceived as movement.

Activating and deactivating alarms

NOTE

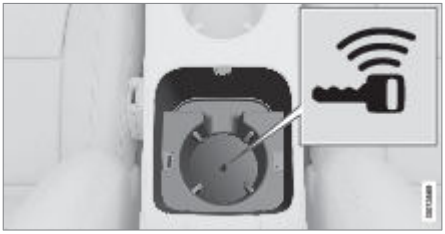
Do not attempt to repair or alter components in the alarm system yourself. Any such attempts may affect the terms of the insurance.

The alarm is activated when the car is locked, and is deactivated when the car is unlocked. It is also possible to deactivate the alarm without a working key.

Deactivate the alarm without a functioning key

The car can be unlocked and disarmed even if the key does not work, e.g. if the key's battery is dead.

1. Open the driver's door with the detachable key blade.
   > The alarm is triggered.



2. Place the key on the key symbol in the back-up reader in the tunnel console's cup holder.
3. Depress the brake pedal and select a gear position.
   > The alarm is deactivated.

Related information

- Alarm (p. 295)
- Locking and unlocking with the detachable key blade (p. 281)

Reduced alarm level

Reduced alarm level switches off certain types of alarm sensors so that the alarm is not activated incorrectly, e.g. when travelling by car ferry.

The alarm's motion and tilt detectors are switched off when reduced alarm level is activated. The alarm does not react to movements inside the car or if the car's inclination changes.

The function can be activated in the car's centre display or when the car is locked with the Polestar app.

The reduced alarm level is switched off after each use and must then be reactivated.

Activate reduced alarm level in the car's centre display

1. Select
2. Select More.
3. Select Locking.
4. Activate Reduced alarm mode.
   > The function is active until the car is driven. It must then be reactivated.

   Reduced alarm level can also be switched off in the settings menu.

Related information

- Locking and unlocking settings (p. 258)
- Alarm (p. 295)

NOTE

The electrical sockets are active for a maximum of 10 minutes after locking with reduced alarm level.

Section 10
—
Driver support

Driving support systems

The car is equipped with different driver support systems which can assist the driver in different situations, either actively or passively.

For example, the systems can help the driver to:

- with steering assistance, reduce the risk of accidentally leaving the lane or colliding with another vehicle
- maintain a set speed
- maintain a certain time interval to the vehicle ahead
- prevent a collision by giving a warning to the driver and braking the car
- park.

Some of the systems are fitted as standard while others are options – which alternative applies is market dependent.

Some of the systems have improved functionality when Google Maps is used.

Related information

- Warnings from various driver support systems (p. 301)
- Speed-dependent steering force (p. 303)
- Electronic stability control (p. 305)
- Road Sign Information* (p. 312)
- Cruise control functions (p. 319)
- Overtaking Assistance* (p. 342)
- Connected Safety (p. 309)
- Lane assistance (p. 350)
- Assistance at risk of collision (p. 358)
- Rear Collision Warning* (p. 373)
- BLIS* (p. 374)
- Ready to drive notification (p. 378)
- Driving support systems (p. 300)
- Driver Alert (p. 379)
- Warning and auto-brake when reversing* (p. 381)
- Park Assist (p. 384)
- Park assist camera (p. 389)
- Radar units (p. 398)
- Camera unit (p. 412)

WARNING

The functions are supplementary aids - they cannot handle all situations in all conditions.

The driver always bears responsibility that the vehicle is driven safely and that applicable road traffic rules and regulations are followed.

Warnings from various driver support systems

If you find that your car operates in a way that you had not expected, this may be because one of the car's safety-related functions has been activated.

What is happening in your car?

There are a number of functions in your car that can actively help to increase safety in traffic, for both you and other road users. You have the option of viewing a list of some of the functions and what they may do – the aim of this is to ensure you are not surprised by the activation of any of the functions. If a function is activated, you can also receive information about this via a text message in the driver display.

Warnings with a symbol, sound, light or vibration

The safety functions in your car can warn you in different ways. By means of vibration in the steering wheel, brake pulse, visual or acoustic signals, or symbols in the driver display, for example.

Assistance at risk of collision

Assistance at risk of collision[51] can assist the driver to avoid a collision via a warning, automatic braking and steering assistance.

The function contains subfunctions that can assist in different situations. Therefore, how you perceive this function may differ depending on which subfunction is activated.

Assistance at risk of collision can perform the following functions if necessary:

- Collision warning
- Brake support
- Automatic braking
- Steering assistance

Lane assistance (LKA[52])

Lane assistance can help you reduce the risk of your car accidentally leaving its own lane. As you can choose your own setting for how this function should assist you, your perception of the safety function may vary.

- Steering assistance: If the function detects that the car is approaching a lane line, you will feel a slight steering input on the steering wheel. Both your hands must be on the steering wheel for this function to work.
- Warning: If the function detects that the car is approaching a lane line, you will receive a warning by means of vibration in the steering wheel.
- Both: You will receive a warning by means of vibration and you will feel a slight steering input on the steering wheel.

Rear Collision Warning (RCW)*

Rear Collision Warning is a system that can help you to avoid being driven into from the rear by an approaching vehicle. If the system detects the risk of a collision from the rear, it can warn you and provide the following assistance, depending on the conditions.

51 Collision Avoidance
52 Lane Keeping Aid

- Intensive flashing of the direction indicators.
- At lower speeds, the function can tension the seatbelts by activating the seatbelt tensioners and also activating the Whiplash Protection System.
- If the car is stationary, the foot brake can be activated.

Blind Spot Information (BLIS)*

BLIS is designed to give a warning of rapidly approaching vehicles, and vehicles diagonally behind and to the side of your car in order to give you assistance in heavy traffic on roads with several lanes in the same direction.

- Warning with an indicator lamp in the side mirror, with a constant glow and flashing light.

Driver Alert

The function is intended to attract the driver's attention he or she is starting to drive less consistently, e.g. if the driver becomes distracted or starts to fall asleep.

- Audible signal in combination with a symbol in the driver display and a message.

Warning and auto-brake while reversing

There are two functions that can assist the driver to prevent a collision while reversing.

- Cross Traffic Alert (CTA)* is designed to warn the driver of crossing traffic when the car is reversing.
- Rear Auto Brake (RAB)* is intended to help the driver detect stationary obstacles that may be directly behind the car when it is being reversed.

If obstacles are detected:

1. A warning signal and the graphic for parking assistance illuminate to indicate the position of the obstacle.
2. If the driver does not pay attention to the warning and a collision is unavoidable, the car is auto-braked and an explanatory text message is shown for why the car was braked.

Whiplash Protection System (WHIPS)

WHIPS is a function that can protect against whiplash. The system consists of energy absorbing backrests and seat cushion, as well as a specially designed head restraint in the front seats.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 300)

Speed-dependent steering force

WARNING

The functions described are supplementary aids - they cannot handle all situations in all conditions.

The driver always bears responsibility that the vehicle is driven safely and that applicable road traffic rules and regulations are followed.

NOTE

Read the individual sections on each system in order to fully understand the functions and learn about important warnings.

Speed related power steering causes the steering wheel force to increase with the speed of the car so as to be able to give the driver enhanced sensitivity.

Reduced power

In rare situations, the power steering may need to work at reduced power, and turning the steering wheel may then seem slightly heavier. This may occur when the power steering becomes too hot and then needs temporary cooling. It may also occur if the power supply is disrupted.

In the event of reduced power, the message Power steering assistance Temporarily reduced is shown, as well as this symbol in the driver display.

While the power steering is working at reduced power, the driver support functions and steering assistance systems are not available.

Change the steering force level

1. Tap on in the centre display.
2. Press Drive.
3. Choose the preferred setting for steering.

Steering wheel resistance selection can only be accessed if the car is stationary or is moving at low speed and in a straight line.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 300)

General speed warning

WARNING

If the temperature increases too much, the servo may be forced to switch off completely. In such a situation, the driver display shows the Stop safely Power steering failure message, combined with a symbol.

The driver is warned with an acoustic signal combined with a symbol being illuminated in the driver display if the speed exceeds 120 km/h (75 mph).

The symbol then remains illuminated until the speed is lower than 120 km/h (75 mph).

The following only applies to India:

- At speeds between 80-120 km/h (50-75 mph) the driver is warned by an acoustic signal every other minute.
- At speeds above 120 km/h (75 mph) the driver is warned by an acoustic signal every other second.

Electronic stability control

Electronic Stability Control (ESC[53]) helps the driver to avoid skidding and improves the car's traction.

The driver display shows this symbol when the system is engaged.

Braking from the system may be heard as a pulsing sound, and the car may accelerate more slowly than expected when applying the throttle.

The system consists of the following subfunctions:

- Stability function[54]
- Spin control and traction control system
- Electric motor drag control
- Trailer Stability Assist

Stability function[54]

The function checks the driving and brake force of the wheels individually in order to stabilise the car.

Spin control and traction control system

Spin control is activate at all speeds, and prevents the wheels from slipping against the road surface during acceleration.

Traction control is active at low speeds, and can brake a slipping wheel to increase traction on the wheel on the opposite side.

Electric motor drag control

Electric motor drag control (EDC[55]) can prevent unintentional wheel lock-up, e.g. during electric engine braking on slippery surfaces.

Involuntary wheel locking while driving can, amongst other things, impair the driver's ability to steer the car.

Trailer Stability Assist*[56]

The function of Trailer Stability Assist (TSA[57]) is to stabilise a car with a trailer connected in situations where the combination has begun to fishtail.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 300)
- Activating and deactivating sport mode for electronic stability control (p. 307)
- Symbols and messages for electronic stability control (p. 307)

53 Electronic Stability Control
54 Also known as Active Yaw Control.
55 Engine Drag Control
56 Trailer Stability Assist is included when a Polestar original towbar is installed.
57 Trailer Stability Assist

Electronic Stability Control in sport mode

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

NOTE

Trailer Stability Assist (TSA[58]) is disabled when ESC sport mode is selected.

The stability system (ESC[59]) is always activated – it cannot be switched off. However, the driver can select ECS Sport mode, which allows for a more active driving experience.

With Sport mode selected, interventions from the system are reduced and the car is allowed to skid more and greater control than normal is thus transferred to the driver.

When Sport mode is selected, the function can be considered as deactivated, despite the function continuing to help the driver in many cases.

Sport mode also provides more traction even if the car has become bogged down or is driving on a loose surface, such as in sand or deep snow.

Related information

- Electronic stability control (p. 305)
- Activating and deactivating sport mode for electronic stability control (p. 307)

NOTE

Trailer Stability Assist (TSA[60]) is disabled when ESC sport mode is selected.

58 Trailer Stability Assist
59 Electronic Stability Control
60 Trailer Stability Assist

Activating and deactivating sport mode for electronic stability control

The stability system (ESC[61]) is always activated – it cannot be switched off. However, the driver can select sport mode, which allows for a more active driving experience.

The driver display indicates activated Sport mode by displaying this symbol with a constant glow until the function is deactivated or until the car is switched off. The next time the car is started, the system is back in its normal mode again.

1. Tap on in the centre display.
2. Press Drive.
3. Select to activate or deactivate ESC.

Sport mode cannot be selected when one of the following functions is activated:

- Speed limiter*
- Cruise control
- Adaptive cruise control*
- Pilot Assist*

Related information

- Electronic Stability Control in sport mode (p. 306)
- Electronic stability control (p. 305)

Symbols and messages for electronic stability control

A number of symbols and messages regarding electronic stability control (ESC[62]) can be shown on the driver display. Here are some examples.

61 Electronic Stability Control
62 Electronic Stability Control

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Constant glow for approx. 2 seconds	System check upon start-up of car.
	Flashing light	The system is being activated.
	Constant glow	Sport mode is selected. NOTE: The system is not deactivated in this mode — it is partly reduced.
–	Traction control temporarily off	The system has been temporarily reduced due to excessive brake temperature - the function is reactivated automatically when the brakes have cooled.
	ESC Service required	The system is disengaged. Stop the car at a safe place. Check whether the fault was temporary or if it persists by: exiting the car, locking the car, unlocking and re-entering. If the problem persists, contact Polestar Customer Support. The car can be driven but without the ESC functionality.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message is still shown, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Related information

- Electronic stability control (p. 305)
- Polestar support (p. 11)

Connected Safety

Connected Safety[63] communicates information between your own car and other vehicles via a cloud service[64]. The function is intended to make a driver aware that there may be a potentially dangerous traffic situation further ahead on the same road.

The function can inform the driver whether another vehicle further ahead on the same road has activated its hazard warning flashers or detected slippery driving conditions. Information about slippery driving conditions is also given if your own car detects slippery surfaces.

Connected Safety can help the driver with the following:

- Alarm on hazard warning flashers
- Alarm on slippery driving conditions

Connected Safety communication between vehicles only works for vehicles equipped with the function and with the function activated. Connected Safety also needs to be approved via Polestar privacy.

Alarm on hazard warning flashers

If your own car's hazard warning flashers are activated, information about this can be sent to vehicles approaching your own car's position.

When your own car is approaching a vehicle with flashing hazard warning flashers, this symbol is shown in the driver display.

Alarm on slippery driving conditions

If your car detects reduced friction between its tyres and the road, this symbol is shown in the driver display. The information can then be forwarded to vehicles that approach the position of your car.

If your car receives information about slippery conditions from another vehicle, this symbol is shown in the driver display.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 300)
- Activating and deactivating Connected Safety (p. 310)
- Limitations of Connected Safety (p. 311)
- Internet connection (p. 533)

63 Not available on all markets.
64 Data is transferred (data traffic) when using the cloud service, and this may involve a cost.

Activating and deactivating Connected Safety

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

For Connected Safety to be able to share information on road conditions with other vehicles, the function needs to be approved in Polestar privacy.

Privacy settings

Profile not logged-in:

1. Press  in the centre display.
2. Press  .
3. Press Privacy and data sharing → Polestar privacy settings.
4. Approve Polestar privacy for Connected Safety.

Profile logged-in:

1. Tap on the profile symbol.
2. Press  .
3. Press Privacy → Connected Safety → Privacy and data sharing → Polestar privacy settings.
4. Approve Polestar privacy for Connected Safety.

If there is no Internet connection, your own car will still inform you, the driver, that slippery driving conditions have been detected by your own car. For Connected Safety to work fully, your own car needs to be connected to the Internet.

Related information

- Connected Safety (p. 309)
- Internet connection (p. 533)
- Limitations of Connected Safety (p. 311)

Limitations of Connected Safety

Information about vehicles with activated hazard warning flashers or which have detected slippery driving conditions is not always communicated between all vehicles within the same area.

This can be because for example:

- Poor or no contact with the Internet.
- Vehicles on slippery surfaces make manoeuvres that are too weak for friction between tyres and road surface to be detectable, e.g. steering wheel movement, acceleration or braking.
- Vehicles that have detected slippery surfaces, or have activated their hazard warning flashers, do not have the function activated.
- Vehicles that have detected slippery surfaces, or have activated their hazard warning flashers, are not equipped with the function.
- There may be no warning due to missing or defective global positioning/satellite navigation.
- Detection of slippery surfaces or activation of hazard warning flashers has taken place on a road that is missing from Polestar's database.
- Connected Safety is not available in all markets and does not cover all areas – Polestar Customer Support has information on current areas.

WARNING

- In certain situations, the function may give incorrect warnings for slippery driving conditions.
- The function cannot always detect other vehicles with activated hazard warning flashers or detect all sections of road with slippery surfaces.

Related information

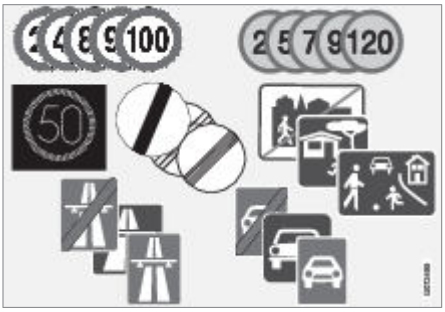
- Connected Safety (p. 309)
- Internet connection (p. 533)
- Limitations of Connected Safety (p. 311)

Road Sign Information*

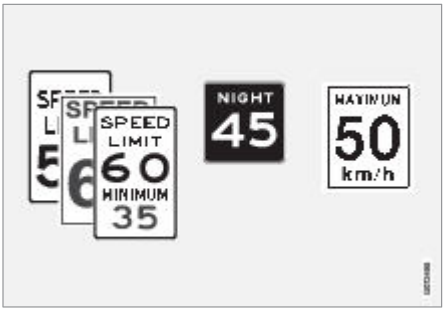
The Road Sign Information function (RSI[65]) can help the driver to observe speed-related road signs and certain prohibition signs[66].

The Road Sign Information function (RSI[67]) can help the driver to observe speed-related road signs[68].

The function is available in certain markets.



Examples of readable signs[69].



Examples of readable signs[70].

RSI can provide information about such things as current speed, when overtaking is prohibited or when the direction of travel is one-way.

If the car passes a speed limit sign, it will be shown in the driver display.

Road sign information (RSI[71]) also includes sub-functions that can warn the driver if a speed limit has been exceeded or in connection with speed cameras.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 300)
- Activating and deactivating Road Sign Information* (p. 313)
- Display mode for road sign information* (p. 314)
- Warning for speed limitation and speed camera from Road Sign Information* (p. 316)
- Limitations of Road Sign Information* (p. 318)

65 Road Sign Information
66 Internet connectivity is required for Road Sign Information to work.
67 Road Sign Information
68 Internet connectivity is required for Road Sign Information to work.
69 Road signs are market-dependent - illustrations in these instructions only show a few examples.
70 Road signs are market-dependent - illustrations in these instructions only show a few examples.
71 Road Sign Information

Activating and deactivating Road Sign Information*

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

NOTE

- The speed camera function will be available at a later time.
- In certain markets, the Road Sign Information function is only available in combination with map data. This may require changing the settings for Google Maps[72].
- In certain markets, the Road Sign Information function only uses map data.

The Road Sign Information function (RSI[73]) is optional – the driver can choose to activate or deactivate this function.

The function is available in certain markets.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the centre display under Assist.

Related information

- Road Sign Information* (p. 312)
- Automatic speed limiter (p. 327)
- Limitations of Road Sign Information* (p. 318)

NOTE

- If the automatic speed limiter function is activated, road sign information is shown in the driver display even if the Road Sign Information function is not activated.
- To remove road sign information from the driver display, you must deactivate both the automatic speed limiter and Road Sign Information.
- When the automatic speed limiter function is activated but Road Sign Information is deactivated, no warnings are given from Road Sign Information. Road Sign Information must also be activated in order to receive warnings.

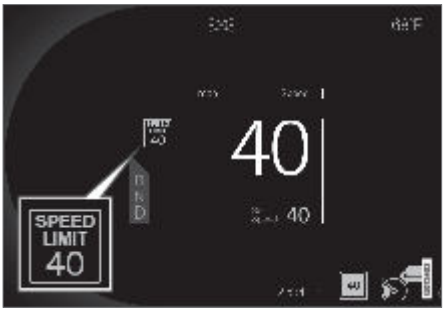
72 Read more at Maps Privacy center.
73 Road Sign Information

Display mode for road sign information*

The Road Sign Information function (RSI[74]) shows road signs in different ways depending on the sign and the situation.

The function is available in certain markets.

Example[75] of detected speed information.



Example[76] of detected speed information for USA.

Example[77] of detected speed information for Canada.

When the function detects a road sign with an imposed speed limit the driver display shows the sign as a symbol.

Since speed-related information is obtained from map data, the driver display can show or change information on the speed limit without having passed a speed-related sign.

An additional sign, such as "no overtaking", may be shown together with the speed limit symbol.

At an entrance with no-entry signs, or with a prohibition confirmed by a sign and map data, the driver is warned with a flashing symbol in the driver display and, depending on settings, an audible warning.[78]

74 Road Sign Information

75 Road signs are market-dependent - the illustrations in these instructions only show examples.

76 Road signs are market-dependent - the illustrations in these instructions only show examples.

77 Road signs are market-dependent - the illustrations in these instructions only show examples.

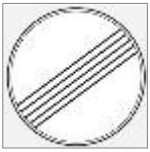
78 Applies to certain markets.

Speed limit or end of motorway

When the function identifies an "indirect speed limit sign" stating the end of the current speed limit – e.g. at the end of a motorway – a symbol is temporarily shown with the corresponding road sign in the driver display.

Normal speed limit signs are displayed in normal cases even if an indirect speed limit sign has been passed. Indirect speed limit signs are only shown if there is no information in the map data on the speed limit for the section of road in question.

Example of indirect speed limit sign:



End of all restrictions.

End of motorway.

Changed speed limit

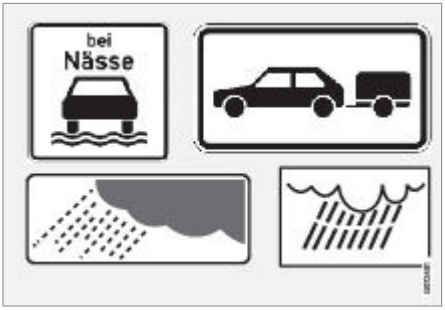
When passing a direct speed limit sign when a speed limit changes a symbol with the corresponding road sign appears in the driver's display.

Example of direct speed limit sign.

The driver display symbol goes out after a short while and comes on again when the next speed related sign is passed.

Speed limit signs are shown in the driver display when map data contains information on the speed limit for the road section in question, even if no direct sign has been passed. If there is no information in the map data, the sign goes out after a certain amount of time.

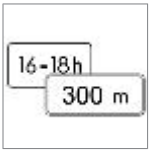
Additional signs



Examples of additional signs.

Sometimes different speed limits are signed for the same road - an additional sign then indicates the circumstances under which the different speeds apply. The road section may be particularly susceptible to accidents in rain and/or fog, for example.

An additional sign relating to rain is displayed only if the windscreen wipers are in use.



Some speed limits only apply after a certain distance or at a certain time of day. The driver's attention is drawn to this fact by means of a symbol for an additional sign below the speed symbol.

Sign for "School" and "Children at play"

The driver display can show a sign for School or Children at Play, if the data is available.

The driver display can show a sign for School or Children at Play, if the data is available.

Related information

- Road Sign Information* (p. 312)
- T map AUTO (p. 564)
- Amap Auto (p. 565)
- Google Maps (p. 566)
- Limitations of Road Sign Information* (p. 318)

Warning for speed limitation and speed camera from Road Sign Information*

There are subfunctions for traffic sign information (RSI[79]) which can warn the driver if a speed limit has been exceeded or if there are speed cameras[80].

The function is available in certain markets.

Examples of information on speed camera and speed limit in the driver display

Speed limit warning

Speed warning given by the driver display's symbol[81] flashing when maximum permitted speed is exceeded. The maximum permitted speed is determined by the applicable speed limit plus any offset value which can be selected in the centre display under settings.

The warning is repeated once after approx. 30 seconds if the speed has not been reduced.

Thereafter, the speed must have been reduced by at least 5 km/h (3 mph) below the speed limit in order for new warnings to be given. A new

79 Road Sign Information
80 Information on speed cameras on the navigation map is not available for all markets/areas.
81 Road signs are customised for each market – the one shown here is just an example.

warning can also be given if the car reaches another speed restricted area.

A speed warning is always given if the speed limit is exceeded in connection with speed camera information.[80]

Warning for speed camera

A car equipped with road sign information and map data[80] can provide information on an upcoming speed camera in the driver display.

Related information

- Road Sign Information* (p. 312)
- Adjusting warnings from Road Sign Information* (p. 317)
- Limitations of Road Sign Information* (p. 318)

NOTE

- To receive an audible warning, the speed warning function must be activated and the audible warning sub-function for traffic signs must be in the On position.
- The speed camera function will be available at a later time.

Adjusting warnings from Road Sign Information*

The driver can choose which warnings are activated for road sign information (RSI[82]) and adjust the limit for them.

The function is available in certain markets.

1. Tap on in the centre display.
2. Press Assist.
3. Tap on ••• for road sign information and select the desired setting.

You can choose to do the following:

- Activate speed warning
- Adjust the limit for Speed Warning[83]
- Activating acoustic warning in connection with speed warning[84]
- Activating acoustic warning in connection with speed camera warning[85]

Related information

- Road Sign Information* (p. 312)
- Warning for speed limitation and speed camera from Road Sign Information* (p. 316)
- Limitations of Road Sign Information* (p. 318)

NOTE

The speed camera function will be available at a later time.

82 Road Sign Information
83 The function does not take account of the selected limit adjustment when the driver display shows the symbol for speed camera.
84 The driver can also be warned when driving towards one-way traffic/no entry road. Applies to certain markets.
85 The car needs access to map data with information on speed cameras.

Limitations of Road Sign Information*

The Road Sign Information (RSI[86]) function may have limitations in certain situations.

The function is available in certain markets.

Examples of what can reduce the function are as follows:

- Faded signs
- Signs positioned on bends
- Rotated or damaged signs
- Signs positioned high above the roadway
- Fully/partially obscured or poorly positioned signs
- signs completely or partly covered with frost, snow and/or dirt
- digital map data with outdated, incorrect or missing speed information[87]
- no Internet connection
- approval for Google Maps[88].

Related information

- Road Sign Information* (p. 312)
- Limitations for camera unit (p. 412)
- Limitations for radar device (p. 399)

NOTE

- In certain markets, the Road Sign Information function is only available in combination with map data. This may require changing the settings for Google Maps[89].
- In certain markets, the Road Sign Information function is only available in combination with map data.

NOTE

- In certain markets, the Road Sign Information function only uses map data.
- This function uses the car's camera and/or radar units, which have certain general limitations.

86 Road Sign Information
87 Map data with speed information does not exist for all areas.
88 Read more at Maps Privacy center.
89 Read more at Maps Privacy center.

Cruise control functions

There are several driver support systems that can assist you while driving in order to maintain a suitable speed depending on situation. Here is a summary to make them more easily distinguishable from each other.

It is recommended that you read all sections in the Manual that relate to a function in order to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.

	Speed limiter*[A]	Automatic speed limiter*[B]	Cruise control[C]	Adaptive cruise control*[DE]	Pilot Assist*[E]
Symbol in the driver display		 + 			 + 
Brief description	The driver controls the speed with the accelerator pedal but is prevented by the speed limiter from mistakenly exceeding a preselected/preset maximum speed.	The automatic speed limiter uses speed information from the Road Sign Information* [F] function to automatically adapt the car's maximum speed.	The cruise control helps the driver to maintain an even speed, which can result in a more relaxed driving experience on, for example, motorways and long straight main roads in smooth traffic flows.	The adaptive cruise control helps the driver to maintain an even speed combined with a preselected time interval to the vehicle ahead.	Pilot Assist can help the driver to drive the car between the lane's side markings using steering assistance as well as to maintain an even speed, combined with a preselected time interval to the vehicle ahead.

A Speed Limiter
B Automatic Speed Limiter
C Cruise Control
D Adaptive Cruise Control
E This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.
F Road Sign Information

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 300)
- Speed limiter* (p. 326)
- Automatic speed limiter (p. 327)
- Cruise control (p. 328)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 330)
- Pilot Assist* (p. 334)

Steering wheel buttons for the cruise control functions

The cruise control functions can be controlled using the left-hand steering wheel keypad. This applies to speed limiter (SL[90])*, cruise control (CC[91]), adaptive cruise control* (ACC[92]) and Pilot Assist*.

The cruise control functions can be controlled using the left-hand steering wheel keypad. This is applicable to the speed limiter (SL[93]), automatic speed limiter (ASL[94]), cruise control (CC[95]), adaptive cruise control* (ACC[96]) and Pilot Assist*.

The cruise control functions can be controlled using the left-hand steering wheel keypad. This is applicable to the cruise control (CC[97]), adaptive cruise control* (ACC[98]) and Pilot Assist*.

Cruise control function buttons

1. : From standby mode – Activates the selected function and stores the current speed.

   : From active mode – Sets the function to standby mode.
2. : From standby mode – Activates the selected function and resumes the stored speed.

   : From active mode – Increases the stored speed.
3. : Reduces stored speed.
4. : When the speed limiter is selected/active, the automatic speed limiter can be selected too.
5. : When adaptive cruise control is selected/active, Pilot Assist can be selected too.
6. : Reduces the time interval to vehicles ahead.
7. : Increases the time interval to vehicles ahead.

Cruise control function buttons

90 Speed Limiter
91 Cruise Control
92 Adaptive Cruise Control
93 Speed Limiter
94 Automatic Speed Limiter
95 Cruise Control
96 Adaptive Cruise Control
97 Cruise Control
98 Adaptive Cruise Control

1. : From standby mode – Activates the selected function and stores the current speed.

   : From active mode – Sets the function to standby mode.
2. : From standby mode – Activates the selected function and resumes the stored speed.

   : From active mode – Increases the stored speed.
3. : Reduces stored speed.
4. : -
5. : When adaptive cruise control is selected/active, Pilot Assist can be selected too.
6. : Reduces the time interval to vehicles ahead.
7. : Increases the time interval to vehicles ahead.

Cruise control function buttons

1. : From standby mode – Activates the selected function and stores the current speed.

   : From active mode – Sets the function to standby mode.
2. : From standby mode – Activates the selected function and resumes the stored speed.

   : From active mode – Increases the stored speed.
3. : Reduces stored speed.
4. : When adaptive cruise control is selected/active, Pilot Assist can be selected too.
5. : Reduces the time interval to vehicles ahead.
6. : Increases the time interval to vehicles ahead.

Related information

- Cruise control functions (p. 319)
- Selecting and activating the cruise control function (p. 323)
- Deactivating cruise control functions (p. 325)
- Setting the stored speed for cruise control functions (p. 346)
- Setting time interval to vehicle ahead (p. 347)

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Selecting and activating the cruise control function

The cruise control functions have to be selected in the centre display first before they can be activated using a steering wheel button. This is applicable to the speed limiter (SL[99])*, automatic speed limiter (ASL[100]), cruise control (CC[101]), adaptive cruise control* (ACC[102]) and Pilot Assist*.

The cruise control functions have to be selected in the centre display first before they can be activated using a steering wheel button. This applies to speed limiter (SL[103])*, cruise control (CC[104]), adaptive cruise control* (ACC[105]) and Pilot Assist*.

The cruise control functions have to be selected in the centre display first before they can be activated using a steering wheel button. This is applicable to the cruise control (CC[106]), adaptive cruise control* (ACC[107]) and Pilot Assist*.

1.

Select the desired function with the button for cruise control functions in the centre display under Assist.

> The button symbol changes depending on which function is selected and the symbol in the driver display is visible but extinguished.

2. When the desired function is selected – press the steering wheel button to activate it.
   > The symbol in the driver display lights up – the function is started and the current speed is stored as the maximum speed.

3. If the function is set to standby mode – press the steering wheel button to reactivate it.
   > The driver display's cruise control markings light up – the car then continues to follow the last speed stored.

Toggling between the speed limiter and the automatic speed limiter

– When the speed limiter is selected – press the steering wheel button to switch to the automatic speed limiter. Press again to switch back.

Toggling between adaptive cruise control and Pilot Assist

– When adaptive cruise control is selected – press the steering wheel button to switch to Pilot Assist. Press again to switch back.

Criteria

Certain criteria have to be met to be able to start any of the functions.

Speed limiter

- The speed limiter can be activated when the car is in Drive mode.
- The lowest maximum speed that can be stored is 30 km/h (20 mph).

99 Speed Limiter
100 Automatic Speed Limiter
101 Cruise Control
102 Adaptive Cruise Control
103 Speed Limiter
104 Cruise Control
105 Adaptive Cruise Control
106 Cruise Control
107 Adaptive Cruise Control

Speed limiter and automatic speed limiter

- The speed limiter can be activated when the car is in Drive mode.
- The lowest maximum speed that can be stored is 30 km/h (20 mph).

Cruise control

- In order to start the cruise control from the standby mode, the car's current speed must be 30 km/h (20 mph) or higher.

Adaptive cruise control

- The driver's seatbelt must be buckled and the driver's door must be closed.
- There must be a vehicle (the "target vehicle") within reasonable distance in front of the car, or the current speed must be at least 15 km/h (9 mph).

Pilot Assist

- The driver's seatbelt must be buckled and the driver's door must be closed.
- The lane's edge markings must be clear and must be detected by the car.
- There must be a vehicle (the "target vehicle") within reasonable distance in front of the car, or the current speed must be at least 15 km/h (9 mph).
- The speed must not exceed 140 km/h (87 mph).
- The driver must keep his/her hands on the steering wheel.

Related information

- Cruise control functions (p. 319)
- Deactivating cruise control functions (p. 325)
- Standby mode for cruise control (p. 329)
- Standby mode for adaptive cruise control* (p. 332)

WARNING

A significant increase in speed may follow when the speed is resumed with the steering wheel button.

Deactivating cruise control functions

The cruise control functions can be deactivated using a button on the steering wheel. The function then switches to standby mode. This is applicable to the speed limiter (SL[108])*, automatic speed limiter (ASL[109]), cruise control (CC[110]), adaptive cruise control* (ACC[111]) and Pilot Assist*.

The cruise control functions can be deactivated using a button on the steering wheel. The function then switches to standby mode. This applies to speed limiter (SL[112])*, cruise control (CC[113]), adaptive cruise control* (ACC[114]) and Pilot Assist*.

The cruise control functions can be deactivated using a button on the steering wheel. The function then switches to standby mode. This is applicable to the cruise control (CC[115]), adaptive cruise control* (ACC[116]) and Pilot Assist*.

- Press the steering wheel button .
  > The symbol and indicators in the driver display are extinguished – the selected cruise control function is set in standby mode.

When a different function is selected in the centre display, the driver display's symbol and the marker indicating a previously selected function are hidden – the set/stored max speed is then deleted.

WARNING

When cruise control functions are in standby mode, the driver must intervene and regulate both speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.

Related information

- Cruise control functions (p. 319)
- Selecting and activating the cruise control function (p. 323)

108 Speed Limiter
109 Automatic Speed Limiter
110 Cruise Control
111 Adaptive Cruise Control
112 Speed Limiter
113 Cruise Control
114 Adaptive Cruise Control
115 Cruise Control
116 Adaptive Cruise Control

Speed limiter*

A speed limiter (SL[117]) works by means of the driver controlling the speed with the accelerator pedal, but the driver is prevented by the speed limiter from mistakenly exceeding a preselected/preset maximum speed.

The function is available in certain markets.

Temporary acceleration

The speed limiter can be temporarily overridden when the accelerator pedal is fully depressed, without the speed limiter first having to be set in standby mode - e.g. to be able to quickly accelerate the car out of a situation.

In which case, proceed as follows:

1. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and release it to interrupt acceleration when the desired speed has been reached.
   > In this mode, the speed limiter is still activated and the driver display's symbol is therefore illuminated.
2. Fully release the accelerator pedal when the temporary acceleration is finished.
   > The car is then electric motor-braked automatically to below the last stored maximum speed.

Steep roads

On steep hills, the speed limiter's braking effect may be inadequate and the stored maximum speed may be exceeded.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 300)
- Steering wheel buttons for the cruise control functions (p. 320)
- Selecting and activating the cruise control function (p. 323)
- Deactivating cruise control functions (p. 325)
- Automatic speed limiter (p. 327)

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Automatic speed limiter

The Automatic Speed Limiter (ASL[118]) function helps the driver to adapt the car's maximum speed to the speed shown on the road signs.

The function is available in certain markets.

This function has a dynamic symbol that changes appearance when the function is active.

The colour of the symbol indicates the status of the function:

Symbol	Meaning
Lit	The automatic speed limiter is active.
Grey	The automatic speed limiter is selected but in standby mode.
Extinguished	The automatic speed limiter is inactive. Another cruise control function is selected.

Speed information from road signs

The automatic speed limiter uses speed information from the Road Sign Information (RSI[119]) function to automatically adapt the car's maximum speed.

Road sign information bases its information on the speed limit road signs that the car passes, plus map data. Physical signs passed have top priority, which may be necessary in the case of roadworks, for example.

If road sign information cannot interpret and provide speed information to the driver support systems, the automatic speed limiter is set to standby mode and changes to the normal speed limiter. In such cases the driver must intervene and brake to a suitable speed.

The automatic speed limiter will be reactivated when road sign information can once again interpret and provide speed information.

Tolerance level for automatic speed limiter

The automatic speed limiter can be set to different tolerance levels. The tolerance is adjusted in the same way as the speed setting is in the speed limiter.

If, for example, the car follows a signed speed limit of 70km/h (43 mph) the driver can instead choose to allow the car to maintain 75 km/h (47 mph).

The tolerance is followed until a road sign with a lower or higher speed is passed - then the car follows the new signed speed limit instead and the tolerance is deleted from the memory.

Related information

- Cruise control functions (p. 319)
- Speed limiter* (p. 326)
- Road Sign Information* (p. 312)
- Selecting and activating the cruise control function (p. 323)
- Deactivating cruise control functions (p. 325)
- Setting the stored speed for cruise control functions (p. 346)

WARNING

- Even if the driver clearly sees the speed-related road sign, the speed information from the Road Sign Information to automatic speed limiter function may be incorrect – in such cases the driver must intervene him/herself and accelerate or brake to a suitable speed.

118 Automatic Speed Limiter
119 Road Sign Information

Cruise control

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

NOTE

The maximum selectable tolerance is +/- 10 km/h (5 mph).

The cruise control (CC[120]) helps the driver maintain an even speed, which can result in more relaxed driving on motorways and long, straight roads in regular traffic flows.

Use electric motor braking instead of the foot brake

With Cruise Control, speed is regulated with less frequent application of the foot brake. On a hill, it may sometimes be desirable to start moving a little faster and limit the acceleration only by electric motor braking. In this case the driver can temporarily disable foot brake application by Cruise Control.

To do so, proceed as follows:

– Depress the accelerator pedal about halfway down and release.

> Cruise Control will disengage its automatic foot braking and then uses electric motor braking only.

Related information

- Cruise control functions (p. 319)
- Selecting and activating the cruise control function (p. 323)
- Deactivating cruise control functions (p. 325)
- Standby mode for cruise control (p. 329)
- Setting the stored speed for cruise control functions (p. 346)

Standby mode for cruise control

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Cruise control (CC[121]) can be deactivated and set in standby mode. This can take place automatically or be done by the driver.

Standby mode means that the function is selected in the centre display but not activated. The symbol in the driver display is extinguished and the cruise control does not then regulate the speed.

Standby mode on driver intervention

Cruise control is deactivated and set to standby mode if any of the following occur:

- The foot brake is used.
- The gear selector is moved to N position.
- The driver maintains a speed higher than the stored speed for longer than 1 minute.

The driver must then control the speed himself/herself.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Automatic standby mode

Activation of automatic standby mode can be due to one of the following:

- The wheels are losing traction.
- Electric motor speed is too low/high.
- Brake temperature is too high.
- Speed falls below 30 km/h (20 mph).

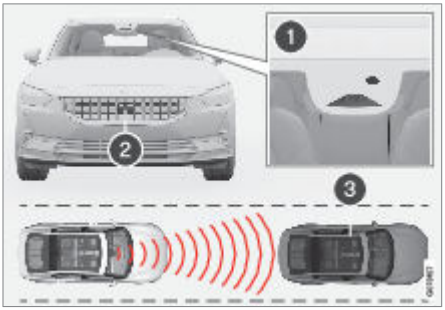
The driver must then control the speed himself/herself.

Related information

- Cruise control (p. 328)

Adaptive cruise control*[122]

The adaptive cruise control (ACC[123]) can help the driver to maintain a constant speed, combined with a preset time interval to the vehicle ahead.



The camera and radar unit measures the distance to the vehicle ahead.

1. Camera unit
2. Radar unit
3. Distance measurement to vehicle ahead

An adaptive cruise control can provide a more relaxing driving experience on long journeys on motorways and long straight main roads in smooth traffic flows.

The driver selects the desired speed and a time interval to the vehicle ahead. If the camera and radar units detect a slower vehicle in front of the car, the speed is automatically adapted using the preset time interval to the vehicle ahead. When the road is clear again the car returns to the selected speed.

Adaptive Cruise Control regulates the speed with acceleration and braking. It is normal for the brakes to emit a low sound when they are being used to adjust the speed.

Adaptive cruise control attempts to:

- regulate the speed smoothly. In situations that demand sudden braking the driver must brake himself/herself. This applies in cases of large speed differences or if the vehicle in front brakes suddenly. Due to the limitations of the radar unit, braking may come unexpectedly or not at all.
- follow the vehicle ahead in the same lane at a time interval set by the driver. If the radar unit cannot see any vehicle ahead, the car will instead maintain the speed stored by the driver. This also takes place if the speed of the vehicle ahead increases and exceeds the stored speed.

Steep roads and/or heavy load

Bear in mind that the adaptive cruise control is primarily intended for use when driving on level road surfaces. The function may have difficulty in keeping the correct distance from the vehicle ahead when driving on steep downhill gradients - in which case, be extra attentive and ready to brake.

Do not use adaptive cruise control if the car has a heavy load or with a trailer connected to the car.

Do not use adaptive cruise control if the car has a heavy load.

Related information

- Cruise control functions (p. 319)
- Selecting and activating the cruise control function (p. 323)
- Deactivating cruise control functions (p. 325)
- Standby mode for adaptive cruise control* (p. 332)
- Symbols and messages for adaptive cruise control* (p. 333)
- Setting time interval to vehicle ahead (p. 347)
- Setting the stored speed for cruise control functions (p. 346)
- Warning from cruise control functions in the event of a risk of collision (p. 344)

122 This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.
123 Adaptive Cruise Control

- Automatic braking with cruise control functions (p. 348)
- Change of target with cruise control functions (p. 345)
- Overtaking Assistance* (p. 342)

WARNING

- This is not a collision avoidance system. The driver is always responsible and must intervene if the system does not detect a vehicle ahead.
- The function does not brake for humans or animals, and not for small vehicles such as bicycles and motorcycles. Nor for low trailers, oncoming, slow or stationary vehicles and objects.
- Do not use the function in demanding situations, such as in city traffic, at junctions, on slippery surfaces, with a lot of water or slush on the road, in heavy rain/snow, in poor visibility, on winding roads or on slip roads.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

IMPORTANT

Driver support components must only be maintained at a workshop – contact Polestar Customer Support.

NOTE

This function uses the car's camera and/or radar units, which have certain general limitations.

Standby mode for adaptive cruise control*[124]

The adaptive cruise control (ACC[125]) can be deactivated and set in standby mode. This can take place automatically or be done by the driver.

Standby mode means that the function is selected in the centre display but not activated. The symbol in the driver display is extinguished and the adaptive cruise control does not then regulate the speed or distance to vehicles ahead.

Standby mode on driver intervention

The adaptive cruise control is deactivated and set in standby mode if any of the following occurs:

- The foot brake is used.
- The gear selector is moved to N position.
- The driver maintains a speed higher than the stored speed for longer than 1 minute.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Automatic standby mode

Automatic standby mode may be engaged in the event of one of the following:

- One of the systems that Adaptive cruise control is dependent on stops working, e.g. stability control / anti-skid (ESC[126]).
- The driver opens the door.
- The driver takes off the seatbelt.
- Electric motor speed is too low/high.
- One or more wheels lose traction.
- The brake temperature is high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The camera and/or radar units are covered by e.g. snow or heavy rainfall (camera lens/radio waves are blocked).
- The speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and ACC is uncertain whether the vehicle ahead is a stationary vehicle or an object, such as a speed bump.
- The speed is below 10 km/h and ACC is uncertain whether the vehicle ahead is a stationary vehicle or an object, such as a speed bump.
- The speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and the vehicle ahead turns off so that ACC no longer has a vehicle to follow.
- The speed is below 10 km/h and the vehicle ahead turns off so that ACC no longer has a vehicle to follow.

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 330)

WARNING

- With the adaptive cruise control is in standby mode, the driver must intervene and regulate both speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.
- With automatic standby mode, the driver is warned via an acoustic signal and a message in the driver display.
  - The driver must then regulate the car's speed, apply the brakes as needed and maintain a safe distance to other vehicles.

124 This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.
125 Adaptive Cruise Control
126 Electronic Stability Control

Symbols and messages for adaptive cruise control*[127]

A number of symbols and messages regarding the adaptive cruise control (ACC[128]) can be shown. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	The symbol is illuminated	The car is maintaining the stored/selected speed.
	Adaptive Cruise Control Service required The symbol is extinguished	The system does not function as it should. Contact Polestar Customer Support. Adaptive cruise control is set to standby mode.
	Radar sensor front Sensor blocked See Manual	Clean the surface of the grille in front of the radar unit.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message is still shown, contact Polestar Customer Support.

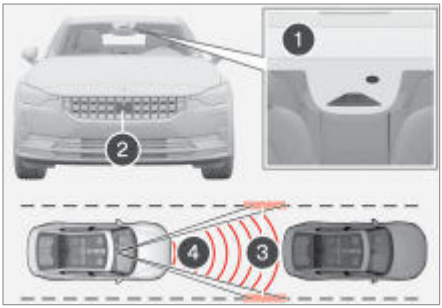
Related information

- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 330)
- Polestar support (p. 11)

127 This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.
128 Adaptive Cruise Control

Pilot Assist*[129]

Pilot Assist can help the driver to drive the car between the lane's side markings as well as to maintain an even speed, combined with a preselected time interval to the vehicle ahead.



The camera and radar units measure the distance to the vehicle ahead and detect lane markings.

1. Camera unit
2. Radar unit
3. Reading lane markings
4. Reading the distance

Get to know Pilot Assist

Pilot Assist helps to steer the car. You may need to drive several kilometres with Pilot Assist before you feel completely comfortable with the function. It is important to be aware of all the applications and limitations of this function so that you can use all its benefits safely.

The Pilot Assist function is primarily intended for use on motorways and similar major roads where it can contribute to more comfortable driving and a more relaxed driving experience.

The driver selects the desired speed and a time interval to the vehicle ahead. Pilot Assist scans the distance to the vehicle ahead and the lane's lane markings on the road surface using the camera and radar units. The preset time interval is maintained with automatic speed adjustment whilst the steering assistance helps to position the car in the lane.

Pilot Assist regulates the speed with acceleration and braking. It is normal for the brakes to emit a low sound when they are being used to adjust the speed.

Pilot Assist attempts to:

- regulate the speed smoothly. In situations that demand sudden braking the driver must brake himself/herself. This applies in cases of large speed differences or if the car in front brakes suddenly. Due to the limitations of the camera and radar units, braking may come unexpectedly or not at all.
- follow the vehicle ahead in the same lane at a time interval set by the driver. If the radar unit cannot see any vehicle in front then the car will instead maintain the speed set and stored by the driver. This also takes place if the speed of the vehicle ahead increases and exceeds the stored speed.

The position of the car in the lane

When Pilot Assist helps to steer, it attempts to place your car halfway between the visible lane markings. For a smoother drive, it is a good idea to allow the car to find a good position. The driver can always adjust the position him/herself by increasing the steering input. It is important for the driver to make sure the car is positioned safely in the lane.

If Pilot Assist does not position the car in an appropriate way in the lane, it is recommended to turn Pilot Assist off or switch to Adaptive cruise control*.

129 This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

Steering assistance

The current status of steering assistance is indicated by the colour of the steering wheel's symbol:

• Illuminated steering wheel indicates active steering assistance.

• Extinguished steering wheel (as in illustration) indicates deactivated steering assistance.

Pilot Assist steering assistance takes into account the speed of the preceding car and the lane markings. The driver can at any time adjust steering intervention from Pilot Assist and steer in another direction, e.g. to change lane or avoid an obstruction on the road. In this case, resistance is felt in the steering wheel as long as steering assistance is active.

Temporary disabling of steering assistance

When the direction indicators are used, Pilot Assist steering assistance is temporarily disengaged. When the direction indicator is switched off, steering assistance is reactivated automatically if the lane's edge markings can still be detected.

If Pilot Assist is unable to interpret the lane clearly, e.g. if the camera unit is unable to see the edge markings for the lane, Pilot Assist temporarily disables steering assistance. Functions for speed and distance regulation continue to remain active. Steering assistance is resumed when the lane can be interpreted again. In these situations, slight vibration in the steering wheel may alert the driver to the fact that steering assistance has been deactivated temporarily.

Round bends and when the road splits

Pilot Assist interacts with the driver, who should therefore not wait for the steering assistance from Pilot Assist but should always be prepared to increase his/her own steering input, especially in bends.

When the car approaches an exit or if the lane splits, the driver should steer towards the desired lane so that Pilot Assist must detect the desired direction.

Hands on the steering wheel

In order for Pilot Assist to function, the driver's hands must be on the steering wheel. It is important for the driver always to carry on being active and alert when driving as Pilot Assist is unable to read all situations and may toggle between off and on without prior warning.

1. If Pilot Assist detects that the driver is not keeping his/her hands on the steering wheel, the system provides a warning by means of a symbol and text message in the driver display to encourage the driver to actively steer the car.
2. If the driver's hands still cannot be detected on the steering wheel after a few seconds the prompt to actively steer the car is repeated supplemented by an audible signal.
3. If Pilot Assist cannot detect the driver's hands on the steering wheel after a further few seconds the audible signal becomes intensive and the steering function is deactivated. Pilot Assist must then be restarted using the steering wheel button .
4. In connection with Pilot Assist being switched off, additional acoustic and visual warnings are given, as well as that the car's system brakes the car. This braking judders in order to attract the driver's attention.
5. The system continues to brake the car to standstill in its own lane and the hazard warning flashers are activated[130].

Steep roads and/or heavy load

Bear in mind that Pilot Assist is primarily intended for use when driving on level road surfaces. The function may have difficulty in keep-

130 Regulations for the use of hazard warning flashers may vary between countries.

ing the correct distance from the vehicle ahead when driving on steep downhill gradients - in which case, be extra attentive and ready to brake.

Do not use Pilot Assist if the car has a heavy load or with a trailer connected to the car.

Do not use Pilot Assist if the car has a heavy load.

Read all warnings before use

Related information

- Cruise control functions (p. 319)
- Selecting and activating the cruise control function (p. 323)
- Deactivating cruise control functions (p. 325)
- Display view for adaptive cruise control and Pilot Assist* (p. 338)
- Standby mode for Pilot Assist* (p. 339)
- Symbols and messages for Pilot Assist* (p. 340)
- Setting time interval to vehicle ahead (p. 347)
- Setting the stored speed for cruise control functions (p. 346)
- Warning from cruise control functions in the event of a risk of collision (p. 344)
- Automatic braking with cruise control functions (p. 348)
- Change of target with cruise control functions (p. 345)
- Overtaking Assistance* (p. 342)

WARNING

- Pilot Assist steering assistance is automatically deactivated and is resumed without prior warning.

WARNING

- Do not wait for all levels of warning and assistance from the systems, but act immediately if any warning signal is triggered.
- - The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
  - The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
  - Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

WARNING

- In certain situations, Pilot Assist steering assistance may have difficulty helping the driver in the right way or it may be automatically deactivated - in which case, the use of Pilot Assist is not recommended. Examples of such situations may be that:
  - the lane markings are unclear, worn, missing, or they cross each other, or if there are several sets of lane markings.
  - the lane division is changed, e.g. when the lanes split or merge, as well as on slip roads.
  - at roadworks and sudden changes in the roadway, e.g. when the lines may stop marking the correct route.
  - edges or other lines than lane markings are present on or near the road, e.g. kerbs, joints or repairs to the road surface, edges of barriers, roadside edges or strong shadows.
  - the lane is narrow or winding.
  - the lane contains ridges or holes.
  - weather conditions are poor, e.g. rain, snow or fog or slush or impaired view with poor light conditions, back-lighting, wet road surface etc.

  The driver should also note that Pilot Assist has the following limitations:

  - High kerbs, roadside barriers, temporary obstacles (traffic cones, safety barriers, etc.) are not detected. Alternatively, they may be detected incorrectly as lane markings, with a subsequent risk of contact between the car and such obstacles. The driver must ensure him/herself that the car is at a suitable distance from such obstacles.
  - The camera and radar sensor does not have the capacity to detect all oncoming objects and obstacles in traffic environments, e.g. potholes, stationary obstacles or objects which completely or partially block the route.
  - Pilot Assist does not "see" pedestrians, animals, etc.
  - The recommended steering input is force limited, which means that it cannot always help the driver to steer and keep the car within the lane.
  - The car's functions have the option to use information from map data which may result in varied performance.
  - Pilot Assist is switched off if the power steering for speed related steering force is working with reduced power – e.g. during cooling due to overheating.

- Pilot Assist must only be used if there are clear lane lines painted on each side of the lane. All other use involves increased risk of contact with surrounding obstacles that cannot be detected by the function.

Display view for adaptive cruise control and Pilot Assist*[131]

WARNING

- This is not a collision avoidance system. The driver is always responsible and must intervene if the system does not detect a vehicle ahead.
- The function does not brake for humans or animals, and not for small vehicles such as bicycles and motorcycles. Nor for low trailers, oncoming, slow or stationary vehicles and objects.
- Do not use the function in demanding situations, such as in city traffic, at junctions, on slippery surfaces, with a lot of water or slush on the road, in heavy rain/snow, in poor visibility, on winding roads or on slip roads.

IMPORTANT

Driver support components must only be maintained at a workshop – contact Polestar Customer Support.

NOTE

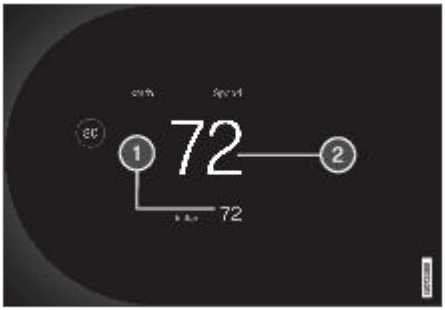
- Pilot Assist cannot be activated if a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is connected to the car's electrical system.
- This function uses the car's camera and/or radar units, which have certain general limitations.

The following illustrative example shows how adaptive cruise control* (ACC[132]) and Pilot Assist* can be shown in the driver display.

Symbol indication

	Both functions are selected but not active.
	Adaptive cruise control is active. Pilot Assist is selected but not available. The conditions for the function are not met.
	Both functions are active.

Speed



Indication of speeds.

131 These functions can be either standard or optional, depending on market.
132 Adaptive Cruise Control

Standby mode for Pilot Assist*[133]

① Stored speed
② Current speed of your car

Time interval

	When the symbol in the driver display shows a car, the time interval to the vehicle ahead is regulated.
	When no car is shown, the functions follow the stored speed.

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 330)
- Pilot Assist* (p. 334)

Pilot Assist can be deactivated and set in standby mode. This can take place automatically or be done by the driver.

Standby mode means that the function is selected in the centre display but not activated. The symbol in the driver display is extinguished and Pilot Assist does not then regulate the speed or the distance to the vehicle ahead, or provide steering assistance.

Standby mode on driver intervention

Pilot Assist is deactivated and set in standby mode if any of the following occurs:

- The foot brake is used.
- The gear selector is moved to N position.
- The direction indicators are used for longer than 1 minute.
- The driver maintains a speed higher than the stored speed for longer than 1 minute.

Automatic standby mode

Automatic standby mode may be engaged in the event of one of the following.

- Any of the systems on which Pilot Assist is dependent stops working, e.g. stability control/anti-skid (ESC[134]).
- Hands not holding the steering wheel.
- The driver opens the door.
- The driver takes off the seatbelt.
- Electric motor speed is too low/high.
- One or more wheels lose traction.
- The brake temperature is high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The camera and/or radar units are covered by e.g. snow or heavy rainfall (camera lens/radio waves are blocked).
- The speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and Pilot Assist is uncertain whether the vehicle ahead

133 This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.
134 Electronic Stability Control

is a stationary vehicle or an object, such as a speed bump.

- The speed is below 10 km/h and Pilot Assist is uncertain whether the vehicle ahead is a stationary vehicle or an object, such as a speed bump.
- The speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and the vehicle ahead turns off so that Pilot Assist no longer has a vehicle to follow.
- The speed is below 10 km/h and the vehicle ahead turns off so that Pilot Assist no longer has a vehicle to follow.

Related information

- Pilot Assist* (p. 334)

WARNING

With automatic standby mode, the driver is warned via an acoustic signal and a message in the driver display.

- The driver must then regulate the car's speed, apply the brakes as needed and maintain a safe distance to other vehicles.

Symbols and messages for Pilot Assist*[135]

A number of symbols and messages regarding Pilot Assist can be shown. Here are some examples.

135 This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Extinguished steering wheel symbol	Indicates deactivated steering assistance. The steering wheel is illuminated when Pilot Assist is providing steering assistance.
	Symbol for hands on the steering wheel	The system cannot detect the driver's hands on the steering wheel. Place your hands on the steering wheel and actively steer the car.
	Radar sensor front Sensor blocked See Manual	Clean the surface of the grille in front of the radar unit.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message is still shown, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Related information

- Pilot Assist* (p. 334)
- Polestar support (p. 11)

Overtaking Assistance*

Overtaking Assistance can help the driver when overtaking other vehicles. The function can be used with adaptive cruise control* or Pilot Assist*.

When adaptive cruise control or Pilot Assist is following another vehicle and the driver indicates the intention to overtake by activating the left-hand direction indicator[136] the systems can help by accelerating the car towards the vehicle ahead before the car reaches the overtaking lane.

The function then delays reducing speed in order to avoid premature braking when the driver's car is approaching a slower vehicle.

The function remains active until the driver's vehicle has cleared the overtaken vehicle.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 300)
- Use Overtaking Assistance* (p. 343)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 330)
- Pilot Assist* (p. 334)

WARNING

- Be aware that this function can be activated in more situations than during overtaking, e.g. when a direction indicator is used to indicate a change of lane or exit to another road – the car will then accelerate briefly.

WARNING

- • The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

136 On left flash only in left-hand-drive car, or right flash in right-hand-drive car.

Use Overtaking Assistance*

Overtaking assistance can be used with adaptive cruise control* or Pilot Assist*.

The following conditions must exist for Overtaking Assistance to be activated:

- there must be a vehicle in front (the “target vehicle”)
- your car's current speed is at least 70 km/h (43 mph)
- the stored speed must be high enough for overtaking to take place safely.

To start the Overtaking Assistance:

– Activate the direction indicator. Use the left-hand direction indicator in a left-hand drive car right in a right-hand drive car.

  Activate the direction indicator.

  > Overtaking Assistance begins acceleration and reduces the time interval the vehicle ahead for a limited period in order to facilitate overtaking. If no overtake is executed, the time interval returns to the preset value.

Related information

- Overtaking Assistance* (p. 342)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 330)
- Pilot Assist* (p. 334)
- Standby mode for adaptive cruise control* (p. 332)
- Standby mode for Pilot Assist* (p. 339)

WARNING

When using the Overtaking Assistance System, the driver should be aware that there may be undesired acceleration if the conditions suddenly change.

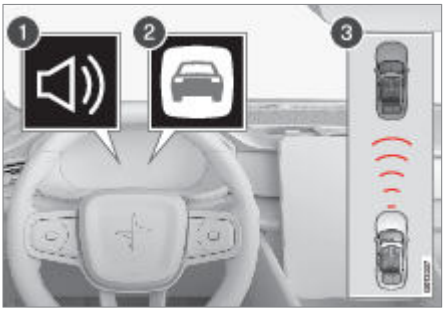
Some situations should therefore be avoided, such as if:

- the car is approaching an exit to turn-off in the same direction as overtaking would normally occur
- the vehicle ahead slows down before the driver's car has crossed over into the overtaking lane.
- the traffic in the overtaking lane slows down.
- a right-hand drive car is driven in a county with left-hand traffic (or vice versa).

Situations of this type are avoided by setting the adaptive cruise control or Pilot Assist to standby mode.

Warning from cruise control functions in the event of a risk of collision

The driver support systems of adaptive cruise control* and Pilot Assist* can warn the driver if the distance to the vehicle ahead suddenly becomes too short.



Audio and symbol for collision warning

1. Light signal in the event of a risk of collision
2. Warning signal in the event of a risk of collision
3. Distance measurement with the camera unit and radar unit

Adaptive cruise control and Pilot Assist use approx. 40% of the capacity of the foot brake. If the car needs to be braked more heavily than the driver support is capable of and the driver does not brake, the warning lamp and acoustic warning are activated to alert the driver that immediate intervention is required.

WARNING

The driver support systems only warn of vehicles which their radar unit has detected – hence a warning may not be given, or it may be given with a certain delay. Never wait for a warning. Apply the brakes when the situation requires.

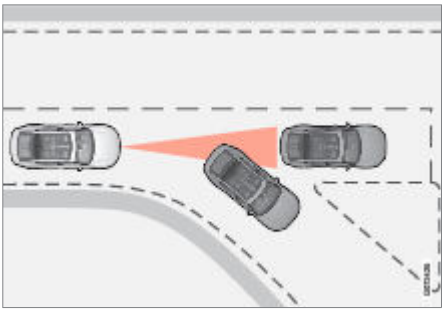
Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 300)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 330)
- Pilot Assist* (p. 334)

Change of target with cruise control functions

The driver support systems adaptive cruise control* and Pilot Assist* have a change of target function at certain speeds.

Change of target



If the target vehicle in front suddenly turns then there may be stationary traffic in front.

When the driver supports are following another vehicle at speeds below 30 km/h (20 mph) and changes target vehicle – from a moving vehicle to a stationary vehicle – the driver supports will slow down for the stationary vehicle.

Automatic standby mode with change of target

The driver supports are disengaged and set in standby mode:

- when the speed is below 5 km/h ((3 mph)) and the driver supports are uncertain whether the target object is a stationary vehicle or another object, such as a speed bump.
- when the speed is below 5 km/h ((3 mph)) and the vehicle ahead turns off so that the driver supports no longer have a vehicle to follow.

The driver supports are disengaged and set in standby mode:

- when the speed is below 10 km/h and the driver supports are uncertain whether the target object is a stationary vehicle or another object, such as a speed bump.
- when the speed is below 10 km/h and the vehicle ahead turns off so that the driver supports no longer have a vehicle to follow.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 300)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 330)
- Pilot Assist* (p. 334)

WARNING

When the driver supports are following another vehicle at speeds in excess of approx. 30 km/h (20 mph) and the target is changed from a moving vehicle to a stationary vehicle, the driver supports will ignore the stationary vehicle and instead accelerate to the stored speed.

- The driver must then intervene him/herself and brake.

Setting the stored speed for cruise control functions

It is possible to set a stored speed for the speed limiter, cruise control, adaptive cruise control* and Pilot Assist* functions.

It is possible to set a stored speed for the cruise control, adaptive cruise control* and Pilot Assist* functions.

(1) +: Increases the stored speed

(2) −: Reduces stored speed

(3) Stored speed

– Change a set speed with short presses on the steering wheel buttons + (1) or − (2) or by pressing and holding them.
  - Short presses: Each press changes the speed in increments of +/- 5 km/h (+/- 5 mph).
  - Press and hold: Release the button when the speed indicator (3) has moved to the desired speed.

  > The speed set after the last button press is stored in the memory.

Actuation with the accelerator pedal

If the driver increases the car's speed using the accelerator pedal before pressing the steering wheel button + (1), the speed stored will be the car's speed when the button is depressed, provided the driver's foot is on the accelerator pedal at the moment when the button is depressed.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Possible speed

Note that the lowest programmable speed is 30 km/h (20 mph) – even though it is capable of following another vehicle down to 0 km/h, a speed lower than 30 km/h (20 mph) cannot be selected/stored.

The driver support functions can follow another vehicle at speeds from 0 km/h up to 200 km/h (125 mph).

Pilot Assist can give steering assistance from almost stationary up to 140 km/h (87 mph).

Related information

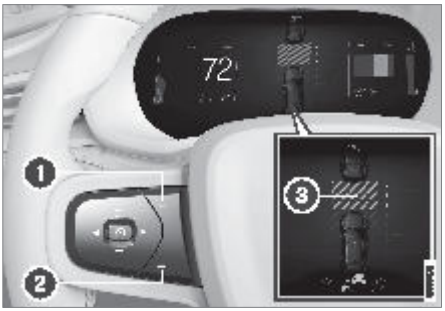
- Driving support systems (p. 300)
- Speed limiter* (p. 326)
- Cruise control (p. 328)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 330)
- Pilot Assist* (p. 334)

NOTE

Cars without adaptive cruise control*, the speed increases instead by +/–1 km/h (+/–1 mph) for each press of the button.

Setting time interval to vehicle ahead

It is possible to set the time interval to the vehicle ahead to be maintained by the adaptive cruise control* and Pilot Assist* functions.



Control for time interval.

1. Decrease time interval
2. Increase time interval
3. Distance indicator

– Press the steering wheel button (1) or (2) to increase or decrease the time interval.
  > The distance indicator (3) shows the current time interval.

Different time intervals to the vehicle in front can be selected and shown in the driver display as 1-5 horizontal lines - the more lines the longer the time interval. One line represents about 1 second to the vehicle in front, 5 lines represents about 3 seconds.

The adaptive cruise control allows the time interval to vary significantly in certain situations in order to allow the car to follow the vehicle in front smoothly and comfortably. At low speed, when the distances are short, the adaptive cruise control increases the time interval slightly.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 300)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 330)
- Pilot Assist* (p. 334)

WARNING

- Only use a time window that suits the current traffic conditions.
- The driver should be aware that short time windows limit the amount of time available to react and take action in an unexpected traffic situation.

NOTE

- When the symbol in the driver display shows a car and a steering wheel, Pilot Assist follows a vehicle in front at a preset time gap.

  When only one steering wheel is shown, there is no vehicle within a reasonable distance ahead.

- When the symbol in the driver display shows two cars, adaptive cruise control is following the vehicle in front at a pre-set time interval.

  When only one car is shown, there is no vehicle within a reasonable distance ahead.

Automatic braking with cruise control functions

NOTE

- • The higher the speed the longer the calculated distance in metres for a given time interval.
- Only use the time intervals permitted by local traffic regulations.
- If the driver supports do not seem to respond with a speed increase when activated, it may be because the time window to the vehicle ahead is shorter than the set time window.

The driver support systems adaptive cruise control* and Pilot Assist* have a special brake function in slow traffic and while stationary. In certain situations, the parking brake is applied in order to keep the car stationary.

Brake function in slow queues and while stationary

For shorter stops in connection with creep mode in slow traffic or at traffic lights, driving is automatically resumed if the stops do not exceed approx. 3 seconds - if it takes longer before the vehicle in front starts moving again then the driver support function is set in standby mode with automatic braking.

– The function is reactivated in one of the following ways:
  - Press the steering wheel button .
  - Depress the accelerator pedal.

  > The function resumes following the vehicle ahead if it starts moving forward within approx. 6 seconds.

Cessation of automatic braking

In some situations, automatic braking ceases on coming to a standstill and the function is set in standby mode. This means that the brakes are released and the car may start to roll - the driver must therefore intervene and brake the car himself/herself to keep it stationary.

This may take place in any of the following situations:

- The driver puts his/her foot on the brake pedal.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The gear selector is moved to N or R position.
- The driver sets adaptive cruise control or Pilot Assist to standby mode.

Automatic activation of parking brake

The parking brake is applied if the function is holding the car stationary with the foot brake and:

- The driver opens the door or takes off his/her seatbelt.
- The function has kept the car stationary for more than approx. 5 minutes.
- The brakes have overheated.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 300)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 330)
- Pilot Assist* (p. 334)
- Brake functions (p. 451)

WARNING

- A significant increase in speed may follow when the speed is resumed with the steering wheel button.
- Driver support systems only warn of obstacles which their camera and radar units have detected – hence a warning may not be given, or it may be given with a certain delay.
  - Never wait for a warning or intervention. Apply the brakes when the situation requires.

NOTE

The driver supports can hold the car stationary for a maximum of 5 minutes – then the parking brake is applied and the function is disengaged.

Before the driver supports can be reactivated, the parking brake must be released.

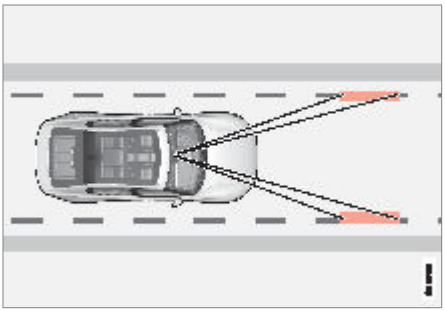
Lane assistance

The function of the Lane Keeping Aid (LKA[137]) is to help the driver to reduce the risk of the car accidentally leaving its own lane on motorways and similar major routes.

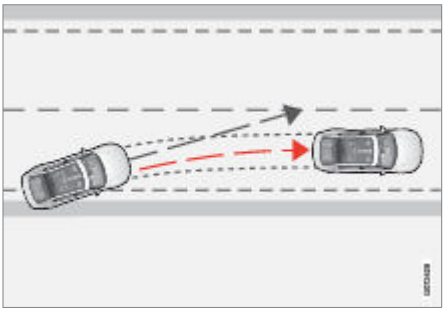
Lane Keeping Aid steers the car back into its lane and/or alerts the driver with vibrations in the steering wheel.

Lane Keeping Aid is active within the speed range 65–200 km/h (40–125 mph) on roads with clearly visible side lines.

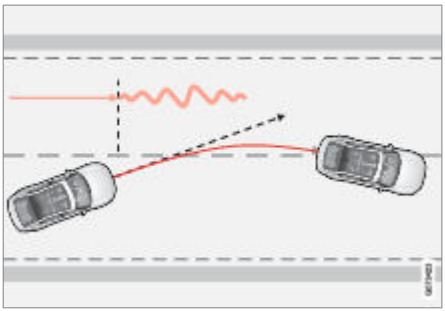
On narrow roads the function may be unavailable, in which case it goes into standby mode. The function becomes available again when the road is wide enough.



A camera reads the side lines of the road/lane.



Lane assistance steers the car back into its lane.



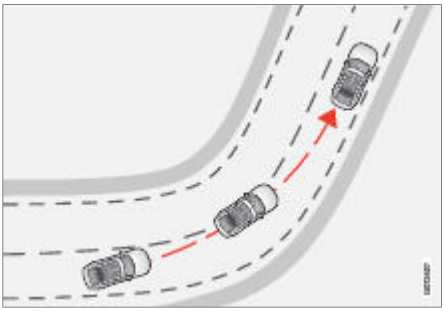
Lane assistance warns with steering wheel vibrations.

Depending on settings, lane assistance acts in accordance with the following:

- Steering assistance activated: When the car is approaching a lane line, the function will actively steer the car back into its lane by applying a slight torque to the steering wheel.
- Warning activated: If the car is about to cross a lane line, the driver is warned by means of vibrations in the steering wheel.

There is also an option where both steering assistance and warning are activated simultaneously.

Lane assistance does not intervene



Lane assistance does not engage on sharp inside curves.

In some situations, lane assistance allows lane lines to be crossed without intervening with either steering assistance or a warning – e.g. when using the direction indicators or if the car is allowed to cut the corners in bends.

Hands on the steering wheel

For steering assistance with lane assistance to work, the driver must have his/her hands on the steering wheel, which the system will continue to monitor.

If the driver does not keep his/her hands on the steering wheel, a warning signal is heard and a message encourages the driver to steer the car actively:

- Apply steering Lane Keeping Aid

If the driver does not follow the advice and start to steer, a warning sound can be heard until the driver starts to steer the car again.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 300)
- Activating and deactivating lane assistance (p. 352)
- Selecting assistance option for lane assistance (p. 352)
- Limitations of Lane assistance (p. 353)
- Symbols and messages for lane assistance (p. 353)
- Display mode for lane assistance (p. 355)
- Difference between Pilot Assist* and lane assistance (p. 356)

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

NOTE

When a direction indicator/flasher is switched on, there are no steering corrections or alerts from lane assistance.

Activating and deactivating lane assistance

The Lane Keeping Aid (LKA) function (LKA[138]) is optional – the driver can choose to activate or deactivate this function. However, steering intervention will always be active for unbroken lines.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the centre display under Assist.

- Button indication on – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button indication – the function is deactivated.

Related information

- Lane assistance (p. 350)
- Selecting assistance option for lane assistance (p. 352)
- Limitations of Lane assistance (p. 353)

Selecting assistance option for lane assistance

The driver can select how the Lane Keeping Aid (LKA[139]) should react if the car leaves its lane.

1. Press .
2. Press Assist.
3. Tap on ••• for lane assistance and select the preferred setting.

Related information

- Lane assistance (p. 350)

138 Lane Keeping Aid
139 Lane Keeping Aid

Limitations of Lane assistance

In certain demanding conditions lane assistance (LKA[140]) may have difficulty helping the driver correctly. In such cases it is recommended to switch off this function.

Examples of such conditions are:

- road works
- winter road conditions
- poor road surface
- a very “sporty” driving style
- poor weather with reduced visibility
- roads with unclear or non-existent side markings
- sharp edges or lines other than the lane's side markings
- as the steering servo for speed-dependent steering wheel resistance is working at reduced power – e.g. when cooling due to overheating.

The function is unable to detect barriers, rails or similar obstacles at the side of the carriageway.

Related information

- Lane assistance (p. 350)
- Speed-dependent steering force (p. 303)
- Limitations for camera unit (p. 412)
- Limitations for radar device (p. 399)

NOTE

This function uses the car's camera and/or radar units, which have certain general limitations.

Symbols and messages for lane assistance

A number of symbols and messages regarding lane assistance (LKA[141]) can be shown on the driver display. Here are some examples.

140 Lane Keeping Aid
141 Lane Keeping Aid

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Driver support system Reduced functionality Service required	The system does not function as it should. Contact Polestar Customer Support.
	Windscreen sensor blocked See Manual	The ability of the camera to scan the roadway in front of the car is reduced.
	Apply steering Lane Keeping Aid	Steering assistance does not function if the driver does not have his/her hands on the steering wheel. Follow the instruction and steer the car.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message is still shown, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Related information

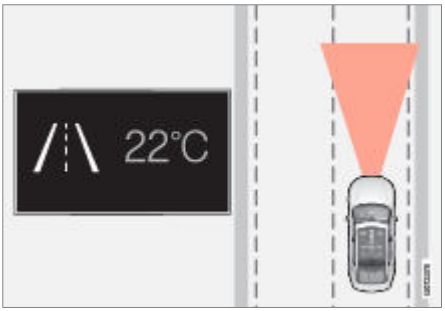
- Lane assistance (p. 350)
- Display mode for lane assistance (p. 355)
- Limitations of Lane assistance (p. 353)
- Polestar support (p. 11)

Display mode for lane assistance

Lane assistance (LKA[142]) is visualised by symbols in the driver display depending on the situation.

Here are some examples of symbols and the situations in which they are shown:

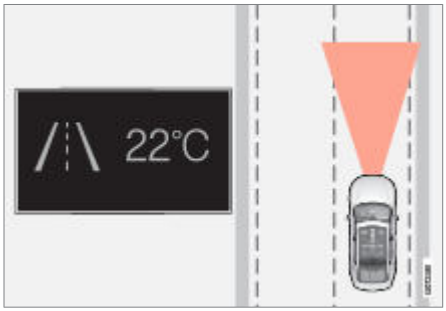
Available



Available — the lane lines in the symbol are white.

Lane assistance is scanning one or both lane lines.

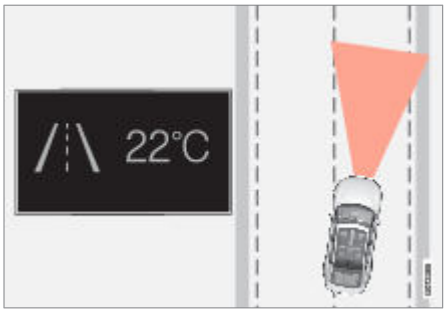
Unavailable



Unavailable — the lane lines in the symbol are extinguished.

The Lane assistance cannot detect the lane lines, the speed is too low or the road is too narrow.

Indication of steering assistance/warning



Steering assistance/warning – the symbol turns coloured.

Lane assistance indicates that the system is giving a warning and/or attempting to steer the car back into the lane.

Related information

- Lane assistance (p. 350)

Difference between Pilot Assist* and lane assistance

• Limitations of Lane assistance (p. 353)

Pilot Assist is a comfort function that can help you to keep your car within its own lane and maintain a safe distance from vehicles in front of you. Lane assistance(LKA[143]) is a function which, in a similar way, can help you in some situations to reduce the risk of your car accidentally leaving its own lane.

Pilot Assist

Pilot Assist can help you to steer your car between the lane markings, as well as to maintain a preset speed and time interval to the vehicle ahead. The function can also help to maintain an advantageous position in the lane using the lane's lane lines.

What does Pilot Assist do?

- Can help to keep the car within its lane by assisting steering in some cases.
- Can help to maintain a preset speed or the distance to the vehicle ahead by means of acceleration and braking operations.

How do I know when Pilot Assist is operational?

Symbols in the driver display in the car indicate when adaptive cruise control* and Pilot Assist are operational.

143 Lane Keeping Aid

	Both functions are selected but not active.
	Adaptive cruise control is active. Pilot Assist is selected but not available. The conditions for the function are not met.
	Both functions are active.

An extinguished symbol in the driver's display means that the function is running but the conditions for LKA have not been met.

A white symbol in the driver's display means that the conditions for LKA have been met and that the function is available.

A coloured symbol in the driver's display means that LKA is providing steering assistance back in to the lane and/or will provide warnings using acoustic signals or steering wheel vibration.

Lane assistance

Lane assistance can provide steering assistance and/or give you an alert when the vehicle is about to leave its own lane unintentionally. This function is active in the speed range 65-200 km/h (40-125 mph) on roads with clearly visible lane lines.

What does lane assistance do?

- Lane assistance can provide the driver with steering assistance, steering the car back into its lane and/or providing warnings using acoustic signals or steering wheel vibration.

How do I know when lane assistance is operational?

Symbols in the driver's display in the car show the status of the function.

Related information

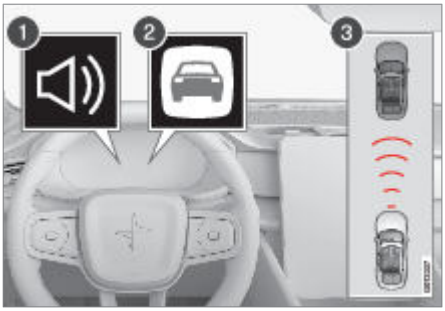
- Driving support systems (p. 300)
- Pilot Assist* (p. 334)
- Lane assistance (p. 350)

Assistance at risk of collision[144]

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Assistance at risk of collision[145] can assist the driver to avoid a collision via a warning, automatic braking and steering assistance.



Function overview

1. Light signal in the event of a risk of collision
2. Warning signal in the event of a risk of collision
3. Distance measurement with the camera unit and radar unit

The driver or passengers are not normally aware of the function - it only intervenes in a situation where a collision is immediately imminent.

The function can help the driver to avoid a collision when driving in queues, e.g. when changes in the traffic ahead, combined with a lapse in attention, could lead to an incident. The function then activates a short, sharp braking procedure, normally stopping the car just behind the vehicle ahead.

The function cannot be deactivated but is always activated. However, system sensitivity can be selected.

Subfunctions

Assistance at risk of collision can perform the following functions if necessary:

- Collision warning

144 The function is not available in all markets.
145 Collision Avoidance

- Assisted braking
- Automatic braking
- Steering assistance

Step 1 – Collision warning

In the event of a risk of collision with a pedestrian, cyclist, large animal or vehicle, the driver's attention is alerted by means of a visual, acoustic and brake pulse warning. At lower speeds or with heavy braking or acceleration there will be no brake pulse warning as the intensity of the brake pulse varies with the speed of the car.

Step 2 – Assisted braking

Assisted braking reinforces the driver's braking action if the system considers that the braking is not sufficient to avoid a collision.

Step 3 – Automatic braking

If the driver has not started to take evasive action and the risk of collision is imminent then the automatic braking function is deployed - this takes place regardless of whether the driver brakes. Braking then takes place with full brake force in order to reduce collision speed, or with limited brake force if it is sufficient to avoid a collision.

The seatbelt tensioner can be activated in connection with the engagement of the automatic brake function.

The function is designed to be activated as late as possible in order to avoid unnecessary intervention. Automatic braking takes place only after or at the same time as the collision warning.

When automatic braking has prevented a collision with a stationary object, the car remains stationary in anticipation of positive action by the driver. If the car has been braked to avoid collision with a slower vehicle in front, its speed is reduced to match that of the vehicle in front.

The driver can always interrupt a braking intervention by firmly depressing the accelerator pedal.

When the function is activated and brakes, the brake lights are switched on. The driver display shows a text message to advise that the function is or has been active.

Steering assistance

The function can help the driver reduce the risk of the car leaving its lane unintentionally or colliding with another vehicle or obstacle by actively steering the car back into its lane or swerving. Steering assistance is not part of a sequence but can be applied regardless of when the other steps occur.

After automatic engagement, the driver display indicates that this has occurred via a text message.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 300)
- Obstacle detection with assistance at risk of collision (p. 360)
- Option to reduce speed with assistance at risk of collision (p. 363)
- Limitations for assistance at risk of collision (p. 363)
- Select sensitivity for assistance at risk of collision (p. 366)
- Assistance at risk of collision in crossing traffic (p. 367)
- Assistance at risk of collision in oncoming traffic (p. 368)
- Assistance at risk of run-off (p. 370)

Obstacle detection with assistance at risk of collision

WARNING

- The function must not be used by the driver to change his/her driving style - the driver must not rely on function alone and allow it to do the braking.
- • The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
  - The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
  - Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

NOTE

It is always the driver who decides how much the car should steer – the car can never take command.

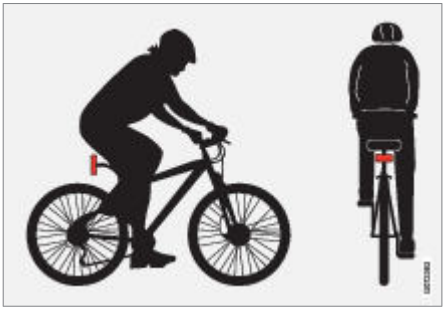
Assistance at risk of collision[146] can help the driver detect different types of obstacles.

The function can detect pedestrians, cyclists or vehicles that are stationary or moving in the same direction as the car and are ahead. The function can also detect pedestrians, cyclists or large animals that are crossing the road in front of the car.

Vehicles

In order that the function shall be able to detect a vehicle in the dark, the vehicle's front and rear lights must be working and clearly illuminated.

Cyclists



Examples of what the function interprets as a cyclist — with clear body outline and bicycle outline.

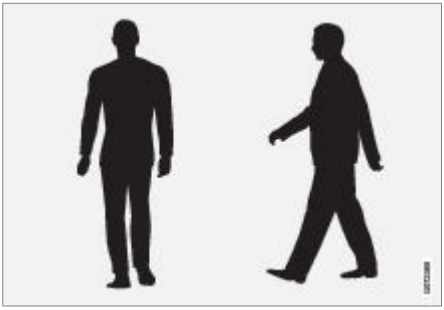
Good performance requires that the camera and radar units that detect a cyclist must receive the clearest possible information about the body and bicycle outline, requiring the ability to identify the bicycle, head, arms, shoulders, legs, upper and lower body plus a normal human pattern of movement.

If large parts of the cyclist's body or bicycle are not visible to the function's camera then the system cannot detect a cyclist.

146 Collision Avoidance

For the function to be able to detect a cyclist, he/she must be an adult and riding a bicycle designed for adults.

Pedestrians



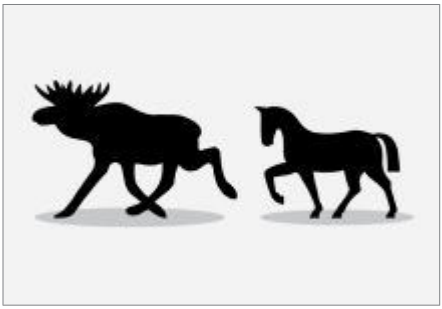
Examples of what the function regards as pedestrians with clear body outlines.

Good performance requires that the camera and radar units that detect a pedestrian must receive the clearest possible information about the body outline, requiring the ability to identify the head, arms, shoulders, legs, upper and lower body plus a normal human pattern of movement.

In order that it shall be possible to detect a pedestrian there must be a contrast with the background and this will be affected by such things as clothes, the background and the weather. With poor contrast the pedestrian may either be detected late or not at all, which may mean that warnings and braking are late or omitted.

The function can also detect pedestrians in the dark if they are illuminated by the car's headlamps.

Large animals



Examples of what the function interprets as large animals - standing still or walking slowly and with clear body outline.

Good performance requires that the system function that detects a large animal (e.g. elk and horse) must receive the clearest possible information about the body outline, requiring the ability to identify the animal directly from the side in combination with what is a normal pattern of movement for the animal.

If parts of the animal's body are not visible to the function's camera then the system cannot detect the animal.

The function can also detect large animals in the dark if they are illuminated by the car's headlamps.

Related information

- Assistance at risk of collision (p. 358)
- Limitations for assistance at risk of collision (p. 363)

WARNING

- The warning and application of the brake may be delayed, or not happen at all. The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven correctly and with a safety distance adapted to the speed.
- The function is a supplementary driver support, but it cannot detect all cyclists in all situations and, for example, cannot see:
  - partially obscured cyclists.
  - cyclists who do not stand out against the background.
  - cyclists wearing clothing that obscures the body outline.
  - bicycles loaded with large objects.
- The function is a supplementary driver support, but it cannot detect all pedestrians in all situations and, for example, cannot see:
  - partially obscured pedestrians, people in clothing that hides their body contour or pedestrians shorter than 80 cm (32 tum).
  - pedestrians who do not stand out against the background.
  - pedestrians who are carrying larger objects.

WARNING

- The function is a supplementary driver support, but it cannot detect all larger animals in all situations and, for example, cannot see:
  - partially obscured large animals.
  - larger animals seen from the front or from behind.
  - large animals that run or move quickly.
  - larger animals that do not stand out against the background.
  - small animals such as dogs and cats, for example.

  The warning and application of the brake may be delayed, or not happen at all. The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven correctly and with a safety distance adapted to the speed.

Option to reduce speed with assistance at risk of collision

Assistance at risk of collision[147] can help to prevent a collision or reduce the collision speed.

If the speed difference between the driver's car and the obstacle is greater than the following specified speeds, the automatic brake function cannot prevent a collision but it can mitigate the consequences of a collision.

Vehicles

For a vehicle in front, brake assistance can reduce the speed by up to 60 km/h (37 mph).

cyclists

For a cyclist, brake assistance can reduce the speed by up to 50 km/h (30 mph).

Pedestrians

For a pedestrian, brake assistance can reduce the speed by up to 45 km/h (28 mph).

Large animals

In the event of a risk of a collision with a large animal, brake assistance can reduce the car's speed by up to 15 km/h (9 mph).

The brake function for large animals is primarily intended to reduce the force of the impact at higher speeds and is most effective at speeds above 70 km/h (43 mph) but less effective at lower speed.

Related information

- Assistance at risk of collision (p. 358)
- Limitations for assistance at risk of collision (p. 363)
- Seatbelt tensioner (p. 50)

Limitations for assistance at risk of collision

Assistance at risk of collision[148] has certain limitations that a driver needs to know about.

Limitations of brake assistance

Extra equipment

Low-hanging objects, e.g. a flag/pennant for projecting load, or accessories such as auxiliary lamps and bull bars that are higher than the car's bonnet, limit the function as they may obstruct the camera or radar unit.

Skidding

On slippery road surfaces the braking distance is extended, which may reduce the capacity of the function to avoid a collision. In such situations, the anti-lock brakes and the stability control ESC[149] are designed to give the best possible braking force with maintained stability.

Low speed

The function is not activated at very low speeds - below 4 km/h (3 mph) - and the system therefore does not intervene in situations where your car is approaching a vehicle ahead very slowly, e.g. when parking.

Active driver

The driver's commands are always prioritised. In situations where the driver is steering and accelerating in a decisive manner, the function does not intervene, even if a collision is unavoidable. Active and aware driving behaviour can therefore delay a collision warning and intervention in order to minimise unnecessary warnings.

Limitations of steering assistance

In certain situations the function may have limited functionality and fail to intervene in the following cases, for example:

- for small vehicles, such as motorcycles

147 Collision Avoidance
148 Collision Avoidance
149 Electronic Stability Control

- if the majority of the car has steered into the adjacent lane
- on roads/in lanes with unclear or non-existent lane markings
- outside the speed range 60-140 km/h (37-87 mph)
- as the steering servo for speed-dependent steering wheel resistance is working at reduced power – e.g. when cooling due to overheating.

Other demanding situations can include:

- road works
- winter road conditions
- narrow roads
- poor road surface
- a very "sporty" driving style
- poor weather with reduced visibility.

In these demanding situations the function may have difficulty in helping the driver in the right way.

Important warnings

Related information

- Assistance at risk of collision (p. 358)
- Limitations for camera unit (p. 412)
- Limitations for radar device (p. 399)
- Polestar support (p. 11)

WARNING

- Driver support systems only warn of obstacles which their camera and radar units have detected – hence a warning may not be given, or it may be given with a certain delay.
  - Never wait for a warning or intervention. Apply the brakes when the situation requires.

- • Automatic braking can prevent a collision or reduce collision speed, but to ensure full brake performance the driver should always depress the brake pedal – even when the car brakes automatically.
  - The warning and steering assistance are only activated if there is a high risk of collision – you must therefore never wait for a collision warning or for the function to intervene.
  - The function does not activate any automatic brake interventions in the event of heavy acceleration.

WARNING

- Warnings and brake interventions could be implemented late or not at all if a traffic situation or external influences mean that the camera unit and radar unit cannot detect pedestrians, cyclists, large animals or vehicles correctly.
- For vehicles to be detected at night, their headlamps and rear lamp cluster must be switched on and shining clearly.
- Warnings for stationary and slow-moving vehicles, as well as large animals, could be disengaged due to darkness or poor visibility.
- Warnings and brake interventions for pedestrians and cyclists are deactivated at vehicle speeds exceeding 80 km/h (50 mph).
- The system can provide effective warnings and brake interventions as long as the relative speed is below 50 km/h (30 mph).
- For stationary or slow-moving vehicles, warnings and brake interventions are effective at vehicle speeds up to 70 km/h (43 mph).
- Speed reduction for large animals is less than 15 km/h (9 mph) and can be achieved at vehicle speeds above 70 km/h (43 mph). The warning and brake intervention for large animals is less effective at lower speeds.

IMPORTANT

Driver support components must only be maintained at a workshop – contact Polestar Customer Support.

NOTE

This function uses the car's camera and/or radar units, which have certain general limitations.

Select sensitivity for assistance at risk of collision

Assistance at risk of collision[150] is always activated, but the driver can select the sensitivity for the system, which regulates the distance for activating warnings.

To change setting:

1. Tap on in the centre display.
2. Press Assist.
3. Tap on ••• for assistance at risk of collision and select the desired setting.

When warnings are perceived as being too frequent the sensitivity can be reduced, which reduces the number of warnings but also leads to the function giving a warning at a later stage. The setting with latest warning should therefore only be used in exceptional cases, such as in dynamic driving.

Related information

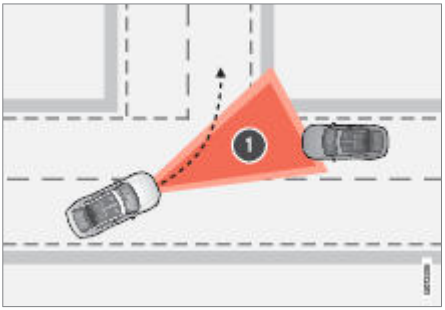
- Assistance at risk of collision (p. 358)
- Limitations for assistance at risk of collision (p. 363)
- Rear Collision Warning* (p. 373)

WARNING

- No automatic system can guarantee 100 % correct function in all situations. Therefore, never test the function by driving at people or vehicles - this may cause severe damage and injury and risk lives.
- The function warns the driver when there is a risk of a collision, but it cannot shorten the driver's reaction time.
- Even if the setting for early warning has been selected, warnings could be perceived as being late in certain situations, e.g. when there are large differences in speed or if vehicles ahead suddenly brake heavily.
- When the setting for early warning is selected, the warnings are given with more advance notice. This may mean that the warnings are given more frequently than with another setting, but it is recommended since it can make the function more effective.

Assistance at risk of collision in crossing traffic

Assistance at risk of collision[151] can help the driver when turning and crossing the path of another oncoming vehicle at an intersection.



1 Sector in which the function can detect oncoming crossing vehicles.

For the function to detect an oncoming vehicle on a collision course, the oncoming vehicle must first enter the sector in which the function can analyse the situation.

The following is also required:

- your car must be travelling at no less than 4 km/h (3 mph).
- your car must turn to the left in markets with right-hand traffic (or to the right in left-hand traffic).
- your car must turn left.
- The oncoming vehicle must have its headlamps switched on.

The function may have difficulty in assisting the driver if, for example:

- there are slippery conditions and stability control ESC intervenes.
- the oncoming vehicle is detected too late.
- the oncoming vehicle is obscured by something.
- the oncoming vehicle has headlamps switched off.
- the oncoming vehicle drives in an unpredictable manner, e.g. abruptly changes lanes at a late stage.

Related information

- Assistance at risk of collision (p. 358)
- Limitations for assistance at risk of collision (p. 363)

NOTE

This function uses the car's camera and/or radar units, which have certain general limitations.

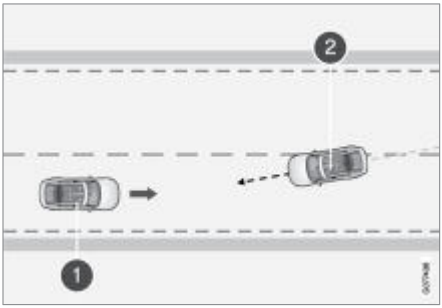
151 Collision Avoidance

Assistance at risk of collision in oncoming traffic

Assistance at risk of collision[152] can assist the driver to give steering assistance to avoid a collision with vehicles in the oncoming lane. The function can also reduce the speed of the car in order to reduce the force of an impact in the event of an encroachment into the car's own lane.

Meeting in own lane

If an oncoming vehicle enters your car's lane and a collision is unavoidable, the function can reduce the car's speed with a view to reducing the violence of the impact.



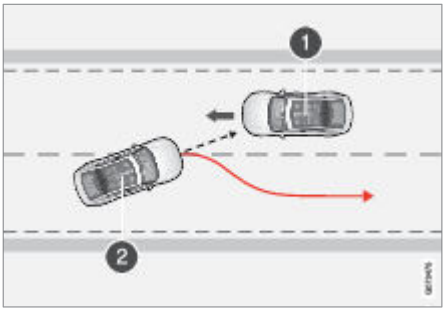
① Your car
② Oncoming vehicles

For this function to work, the following criteria must be met:

- your car must be travelling at more than 4 km/h (3 mph)
- the road section must be straight
- your car's lane must have clear lane markings
- your car must be positioned straight in its own lane
- the oncoming vehicle must be within your car's lane markings
- the oncoming vehicle must have its headlamps switched on
- this function can only handle "front to front" collisions
- this function can only detect vehicles with four wheels.

When drifting across to oncoming traffic

The function can help a distracted driver who does not notice that the car is drifting into the oncoming lane.



The function can assist by guiding the car back to its own lane.

① Oncoming vehicles
② Your car

The function is active within the speed range 60-140 km/h (37-87 mph) on roads with clearly visible lane markings/lines.

If the car is about to leave its own lane while an oncoming vehicle is approaching at the same time, the function can help the driver to steer the car back into its own lane.

However, the function does not intervene with steering assistance if the direction indicator is used. If the function detects that the driver is actively driving the car, activation of the function will be delayed.

Related information

- Assistance at risk of collision (p. 358)
- Limitations for assistance at risk of collision (p. 363)

WARNING

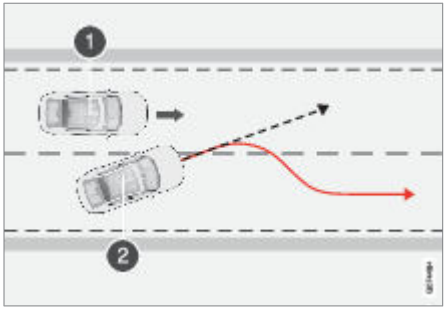
Warnings and brake interventions due to an impending collision with an oncoming vehicle always come very late.

NOTE

This function uses the car's camera and/or radar units, which have certain general limitations.

Assistance at risk of collision to help avoid impact with a vehicle in the driver's blind spot*

Assistance at risk of collision[153] can help a driver who does not notice that the car is about to leave its own lane while an oncoming vehicle is approaching at the same time, either from behind or in the blind spot.



The function can assist by steering the car back to its own lane.

1. Other vehicle in the blind spot
2. Your car

The function can even assist if the driver intentionally changes lanes using direction indicators without noticing that another vehicle is approaching.

The function is active within the speed range 60-140 km/h (37-87 mph) on roads with clearly visible lane markings/lines.

The lamps in the door mirrors flash during steering intervention, regardless of whether BLIS*[154] is activated. An acoustic signal can also be heard.

Related information

- Assistance at risk of collision (p. 358)
- Limitations for assistance at risk of collision (p. 363)
- BLIS* (p. 374)

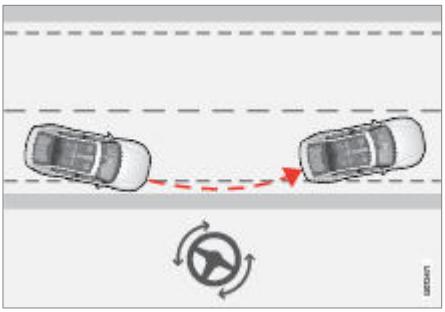
153 Collision Avoidance
154 Blind Spot Information

Assistance at risk of run-off

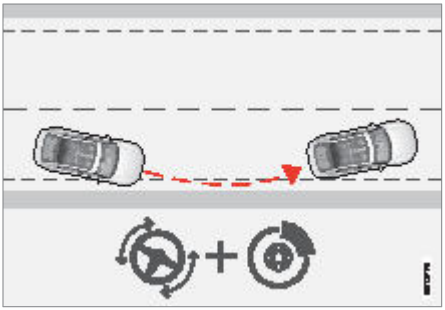
Assistance at risk of collision[155] can help the driver and reduce the risk of the car accidentally leaving the road by actively steering the car back onto the road.

The function has two levels for intervention:

- Steering assistance only
- Steering assistance with brake intervention



Intervention with steering assistance



Intervention with steering assistance and braking

Brake intervention helps in situations where steering assistance alone is not sufficient. The brake force is adapted automatically depending on the situation at the time of road run-off.

The function is active within the speed range 65-140 km/h (40-87 mph) on roads with clearly visible lane markings/lines.

The car's camera unit scans the edges of the road and the painted lane markings. If the car is about to leave the side of the road, the car can be steered back onto the road, and if the steering intervention is not enough to avoid run-off, the brakes are also activated.

However, there is no intervention from the function with either steering assistance or brake intervention if the direction indicators are used. If the function detects that the driver is actively driving the car, activation of the function will be delayed.

Related information

- Assistance at risk of collision (p. 358)
- Limitations for assistance at risk of collision (p. 363)

Symbols and messages for assistance upon risk of collision

A number of symbols and messages regarding assistance at risk of collision[156] control can be shown in the driver display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
 	Automatic intervention Collision Avoidance	When the function is activated, a message is shown to the driver indicating that the system has been activated.
	Collision Avoidance system unavailable	The system is temporarily out of order or is working with reduced performance.
	Collision Avoidance Reduced functionality Service required	The system does not function as it should. Contact a workshop.
	Windscreen sensor blocked See Manual	The ability of the camera to scan the roadway in front of the car is reduced.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message is still shown, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Related information

- Assistance at risk of collision (p. 358)
- Limitations for assistance at risk of collision (p. 363)

- Polestar support (p. 11)

Rear Collision Warning*

The Rear Collision Warning[157] (RCW) function can help the driver to avoid being hit by a vehicle approaching from behind.

Drivers in vehicles behind can be warned about an imminent collision by the function flashing intensively with the direction indicators.

If, at a speed below 30 km/h (20 mph), the function detects that the car is in danger of being hit from behind, the seatbelt tensioners may tension the front seatbelts.

The Whiplash Protection System is also activated in the event of a collision.

Immediately before a collision from behind, this function may also activate the foot brake in order to reduce the forward acceleration of the car during the collision. However, the foot brake is only activated if the car is stationary. The foot brake releases immediately if the accelerator pedal is depressed.

The function is activated automatically when the car is started.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 300)
- Limitations of Rear Collision Warning* (p. 374)
- Whiplash Protection System (p. 44)

157 The function is not available in all markets.

Limitations of Rear Collision Warning*[158]

In certain cases the Rear Collision Warning (RCW) may have difficulty helping the driver in the event of a collision risk.

This can, for example, be if:

- the vehicle approaching from behind is detected too late
- the vehicle approaching from behind changes lane at the last moment.
- a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is connected to the car's electrical system - the function is then deactivated automatically.

Related information

- Rear Collision Warning* (p. 373)
- Limitations for camera unit (p. 412)
- Limitations for radar device (p. 399)

NOTE

- In certain markets, RCW does not give a warning with the direction indicators due to local traffic regulations - in such cases, this part of the function is deactivated.
- This function uses the car's camera and/or radar units, which have certain general limitations.

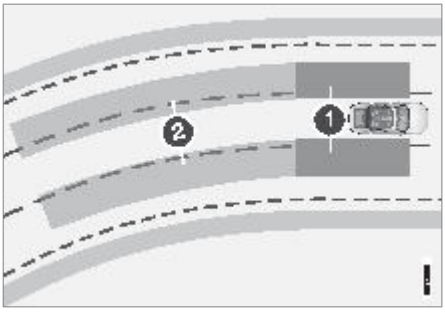
BLIS*

The BLIS[159] function is intended to help the driver detect vehicles diagonally behind and to the side of the car so as to provide assistance in heavy traffic on roads with several lanes in the same direction.

Location of BLIS lamp

BLIS is a driver aid intended to give a warning of:

- vehicles in the car's blind spot
- quickly approaching vehicles in the left and right lanes closest to the car.



Principle of BLIS

1. Zone in blind spot
2. Zone for quickly approaching vehicle

158 RCW: Rear collision warning.
159 Blind Spot Information

The BLIS function is active at speeds above 10 km/h (6 mph).

The system is designed to react when:

- your car is overtaken by other vehicles
- another vehicle is quickly approaching your car.

When BLIS detects a vehicle in Zone 1 or a quickly approaching vehicle in Zone 2, the indicator lamp on the right or left-hand door mirror illuminates with a constant glow. If the driver activates the direction indicator on the same side as the warning, the indicator lamp will change over from a constant glow to flashing with a more intense light.

If passing vehicles drive more than 15 km/h (9 mph) faster than the driver's vehicle, BLIS will not react.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 300)
- Activating and deactivating BLIS* (p. 376)
- Limitations of BLIS* (p. 376)
- Messages for BLIS* (p. 377)

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

NOTE

- The lamp illuminates on the side of the car where the system has detected the vehicle. If the car is overtaken on both sides at the same time then both lamps illuminate.
- This function uses the car's camera and/or radar units, which have certain general limitations.

Activating and deactivating BLIS*

The BLIS[160] function can be activated or deactivated.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the centre display under Assist.

- Button indication on – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button indication – the function is deactivated.

If BLIS is activated when the car is started, the function is confirmed by the door mirror indicator lamps flashing once.

If BLIS is deactivated when the car is switched off, it remains deactivated the next time the car is started and no indicator lamps are illuminated.

Related information

- BLIS* (p. 374)
- Limitations of BLIS* (p. 376)

Limitations of BLIS*

The BLIS[161] function may have limitations in certain situations.

Keep the surface indicated clean – on both the left and right-hand sides of the car.

Examples of limitations:

- Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may reduce the functions and deactivate alerts.
- The BLIS function is deactivated automatically if a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is connected to the car's electrical system.
- For good BLIS performance, bicycle racks, luggage holders or similar should not be mounted on the car's towbar.

Related information

- BLIS* (p. 374)
- Limitations for camera unit (p. 412)
- Limitations for radar device (p. 399)

WARNING

- BLIS does not work on sharp bends.
- BLIS does not work when the car is reversing.

160 Blind Spot Information
161 Blind Spot Information

Messages for BLIS*

NOTE

This function uses the car's radar units, which have certain general limitations.

A number of messages regarding BLIS[162] can be shown in the driver display. Here are some examples.

Message	Specification
Blind spot sensor Service required	The system does not function as it should. Contact Polestar Customer Support.
Blind spot system off Trailer attached	BLIS and Cross Traffic Alert* have been deactivated as a trailer has been connected to the car's electrical system.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message is still shown, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Related information

- BLIS* (p. 374)
- Warning and auto-brake when reversing* (p. 381)
- Polestar support (p. 11)

Ready to drive notification

The car's system can help the driver to notice that the vehicle ahead is continuing to drive.

In order not to be stationary for too long and hold up the traffic, the Ready to Drive Notification function gives an acoustic signal and shows a symbol and message in the driver display. Notifications may not be given if the system detects pedestrians or cyclists in the vicinity of the car.

To activate or deactivate the function:

1. Tap on in the centre display.
2. Tap on Assist and change the preferred setting.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 300)

WARNING

- However, the system cannot detect pedestrians and cyclists in all situations. The driver always bears responsibility for ensuring that the car is driven safely.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

NOTE

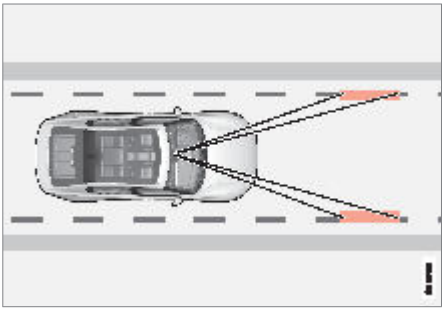
This function uses the car's camera and/or radar units, which have certain general limitations.

Driver Alert

The Driver Alert function is intended to help make the driver aware that he or she is starting to drive less consistently, e.g. if the driver becomes distracted or starts to fall asleep.

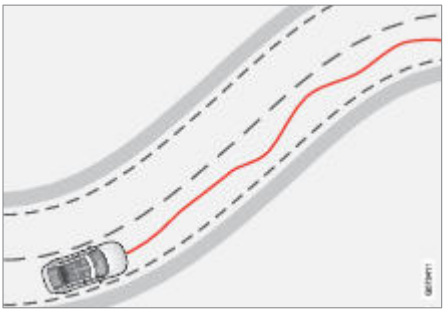
The objective for the function is to detect slowly deteriorating driving ability and it is primarily intended for major roads. The function is not intended for city traffic.

The function is activated when speed exceeds 65 km/h (40 mph) and remains active as long as the speed is over 60 km/h (37 mph).



Driver Alert reads the position of the car in the lane.

A camera detects the edge markings painted on the carriageway and compares the alignment of the road with the driver's steering wheel movements.



The car is being driven erratically in the lane.

If driving behaviour becomes noticeably inconsistent, the driver is alerted by this symbol in the driver display, combined with an acoustic signal and the text message Time for a break Driver Alert. The warning is repeated after a time if driving behaviour has not improved.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 300)
- Activating and deactivating Driver Alert (p. 380)
- Limitations of Driver Alert (p. 381)

WARNING

- Driver Alert should not be used to extend a period of driving. The driver should instead plan for breaks at regular intervals and make sure they are well rested.

Activating and deactivating Driver Alert

WARNING

- • The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

- An alarm from Driver Alert should be taken very seriously, as a sleepy driver is often not aware of his/her own condition.

  If the alarm sounds or you feel fatigued:

  - Stop the car safely as soon as possible and rest.

  Studies have shown that it is just as dangerous to drive while tired as it is to drive under the influence of alcohol or other stimulants.

Driver Alert can be activated or deactivated in the centre display

1. Tap on in the centre display.
2. Tap on Assist and activate or deactivate Driver Alert.

- Button indication on – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button indication – the function is deactivated.

Related information

- Driver Alert (p. 379)
- Limitations of Driver Alert (p. 381)

Limitations of Driver Alert

The Driver Alert function may have limitations in certain situations.

In some cases the system may issue a warning despite driving ability not deteriorating, for example:

- in strong side winds
- on rutted road surfaces.

Related information

- Driver Alert (p. 379)
- Limitations for camera unit (p. 412)
- Limitations for radar device (p. 399)

WARNING

In some cases, driving behaviour is not affected despite driver fatigue – e.g. when using the Pilot Assist* function – resulting in the driver not getting a warning from Driver Alert.

It is therefore important to always stop and take a break at the slightest feeling of fatigue, regardless of whether the function has given a warning.

NOTE

This function uses the car's camera and/or radar units, which have certain general limitations.

Warning and auto-brake when reversing*

There are systems in the car that can assist the driver to detect obstacles when reversing and even brake automatically if the driver does not manage to act in time.

The Rear Auto Brake (RAB)* and Cross Traffic Alert (CTA)* functions are only active if the car rolls backwards or if reverse gear has been selected.

If obstacles are detected:

1. A warning signal and the parking assistance graphic illuminate to indicate the position of the obstacle.
2. If the driver ignores the warning and a collision is unavoidable, the car may be auto-braked, and an explanatory text message is shown for why the car was braked.

If the accelerator pedal is depressed forcefully then the car also reverses after braking automatically.

Obstacles immediately behind

Rear Auto Brake is intended to help the driver detect stationary obstacles that may be directly behind the car when it is being reversed.

This function is primarily designed to detect stationary obstacles that are higher than the rear bumper – and not moving vehicles, for example.

Brake intervention with Rear Auto Brake is active at speeds below 10 km/h (6 mph).

The auto brake needs to be deactivated before using an automatic car wash, and may also need to be deactivated to avoid unwanted intervention, e.g. when reversing in tall grass.

Obstacles from the side

Cross Traffic Alert is designed to help the driver detect traffic crossing behind the car when it is reversing.

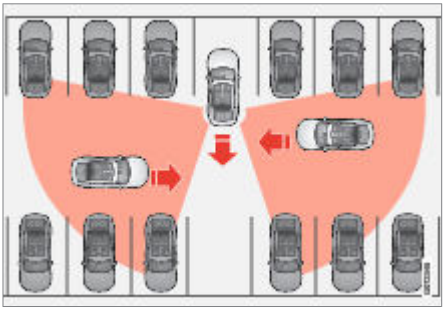
This function is primarily designed to detect larger vehicles in motion. In favourable condi-

tions it may also be able to detect smaller objects, such as cyclists and pedestrians.

Brake intervention with Cross Traffic Alert is active at speeds below 15 km/h (9 mph).

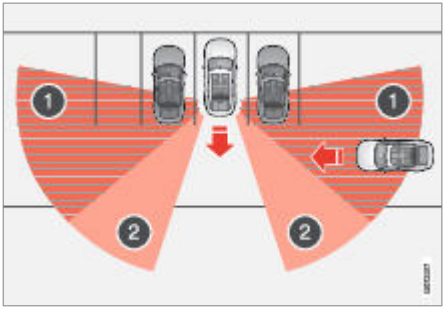
The auto brake needs to be deactivated before using an automatic car wash, and may also need to be deactivated to avoid unwanted intervention, e.g. when reversing in tall grass.

Examples of detection and limitations

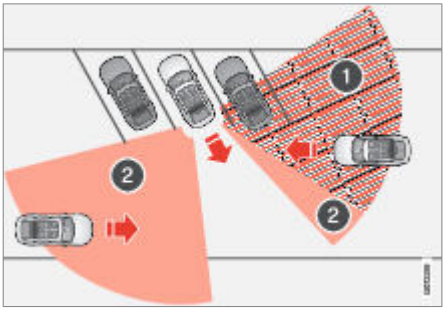


Examples of areas where the function can assist the driver to detect obstacles during reversing.

The function's sensors cannot detect moving traffic through other parked vehicles or bulky obstacles. Here are some examples of when approaching vehicles cannot therefore be detected until they are very close.



The car is parked deep inside a parking slot.



In an angled parking slot, the sensors may be completely blocked on one side.

① Blind sector
② Sector in which the function can detect

However, as your car slowly reverses, the angle it makes with the obstructing vehicle/object changes and the blind sector rapidly decreases.

Reversing with equipment connected to the towbar

RAB and CTA are deactivated automatically when a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is connected to the towbar connector. If the connected equipment has no electrical connection,

RAB and CTA must be deactivated manually by pressing a button in the centre display.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 300)
- Activating and deactivating warning and auto-brake when reversing* (p. 384)
- BLIS* (p. 374)
- Park Assist (p. 384)
- Limitations of Parking assistance (p. 388)
- Automatic car wash (p. 685)

WARNING

- The functions are supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – they cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the manual that relate to these functions in order to learn about factors such as limitations, among other things, and what the driver should be aware of before using the functions.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

NOTE

The functions use the car's detectors and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

Activating and deactivating warning and auto-brake when reversing*

The driver can choose to deactivate auto-brake with Rear Auto Brake (RAB)* and Cross Traffic Alert (CTA)*. The warning signal can be deactivated separately.

Warning signal

Activate or deactivate the warning signal with this button in parking camera view.

Auto Brake

Activate or deactivate the auto-brake with this button in parking camera view.

- Button indication on – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button indication – the function is deactivated.

The functions are activated automatically when the car is started.

Related information

- Warning and auto-brake when reversing* (p. 381)
- Park assist camera (p. 389)

Park Assist

The Parking Assistance System (PAS[163]) uses sensors to assist the driver when manoeuvring in tight spaces by indicating the distance to obstacles through acoustic signals combined with a graphic in the centre display.

Screen view showing obstacle zones and sensor sectors.

The centre display shows an overview of the relationship between the car and detected obstacles.

The highlighted sector indicates the location of the obstacle. The closer the car symbol is to a highlighted sector box at the front/back, the shorter the distance between the car and detected obstacle.

The side sectors change colour as the distance between the car and an object is reduced.

The shorter the distance to the obstacle, the faster the signal sounds. Other sound from the audio system is muted automatically.

The acoustic signal for obstacles ahead and to the sides is active when the car is moving but stops after the car has been stationary for approx. 2 seconds. The acoustic signal for obstacles behind is also active when the car is stationary.

At a distance within approx. 30 cm (1 foot) from an obstacle behind or in front of the car, the tone is constant and the active sensor field closest to the car symbol is filled.

163 Park Assist System

At a distance within approx. 25 cm (0.8 foot) from an obstacle to the sides, the tone pulses intensively and the active sector field changes colour from orange to red.

The volume of the parking assistance signal can be adjusted while the signal is sounding by means of the [>II] knob on the centre console. Adjustment can also be performed in the parking assistance system's settings.

1. Tap on in the centre display.
2. Press Assist.
3. Tap on ••• for the Parking Assistance System and select the preferred setting.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 300)
- Park Assist System front, rear and along the sides (p. 386)
- Activating and deactivating parking assistance (p. 388)
- Limitations for camera unit (p. 412)
- Limitations for radar device (p. 399)

WARNING

- The parking sensors are a supplementary support to the driver's attention to the car's surroundings. Their ability to detect obstacles at certain angles can be affected by the conditions during use.
- Pay particular attention if there are people and animals near the car.
- Bear in mind that the front of the car may swing out towards oncoming traffic during the parking manoeuvre.
- Objects/obstacles may be closer to the car than they appear to be on the screen.

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

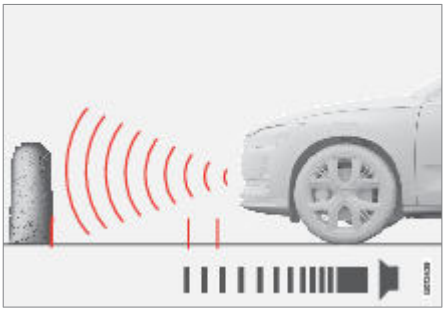
Park Assist System front, rear and along the sides

NOTE

With the exception of the sector nearest to the car symbol, audible warnings are only given for objects directly in the path of the car.

Park Assist System (PAS[164]) has different behaviour depending on which part of the car is approaching an obstacle.

Forwards

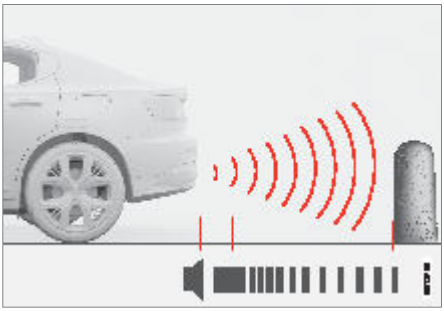


The warning signal has a constant acoustic signal at less than approx. 30 cm (1 foot) from an obstacle.

The Park Assist System's front detectors are activated automatically when the car is started. They are active at speeds below 10 km/h (6 mph).

The measuring range is approx. 80 cm (2.5 feet) in front of the car.

Backwards



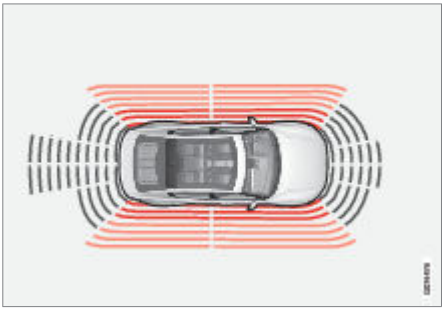
The warning signal has a constant tone at less than approx. 30 cm (1 foot) from an obstacle.

The sensors for reverse are activated if the car rolls backward without a gear engaged or when the gear lever is moved to reverse position.

The measuring range is approx. 1.5 metres (5 feet) behind the car.

Reversing with a trailer or bicycle rack connected electrically to the car's electrical system automatically disables the Parking Assistance System to the rear.

Along the sides*



The warning signal pulses intensively at less than approx. 25 cm (0.8 feet) from an obstacle.

The Park Assist System's side detectors are activated automatically when the car is started. They are active at speeds below 10 km/h (6 mph).

The measuring range is approx. 25 cm (0.8 feet) from the sides.

However, the detection range of the side sensors increases significantly when the steering angle of the front wheels is increased, and obstacles of up to approx. 90 cm (3 feet) located diagonally behind or in front of the car are detected when the steering wheel is turned.

Related information

- Park Assist (p. 384)
- Sensor fields for parking assistance system (p. 394)

IMPORTANT

When auxiliary lamps are fitted: Remember that these must not obscure the sensors - the auxiliary lamps may then be perceived as an obstacle.

NOTE

- The parking assistance system is deactivated when the parking brake is used.
- When reversing with a trailer or a bicycle rack, for example, on the towbar and wiring is not connected, you may need to switch off the Park Assist System manually so that the sensors do not react to these.

Activating and deactivating parking assistance

The park assist function (PAS[165]) can be activated or deactivated.

The Park Assist System's front and side detectors* are activated automatically when the car is started. The rear detectors are activated if the car rolls backwards or when reverse gear is engaged.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the camera view.

- Button indication on – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button indication – the function is deactivated.

In cars equipped with a parking camera, the Parking Assistance System can also be activated or deactivated from the relevant camera view.

Related information

- Park Assist (p. 384)
- Limitations of Parking assistance (p. 388)

Limitations of Parking assistance

The Parking Assistance System (PAS[166]) cannot detect everything in all situations and may therefore have limited functionality in some cases.

A driver should be aware about the following examples of Park Assist System's limitations.

Related information

- Park Assist (p. 384)
- Warning and auto-brake when reversing* (p. 381)

WARNING

- - The parking sensors have blind spots where obstacles cannot be detected.
  - Pay particular attention if there are people and animals near the car.
  - Bear in mind that the front of the car may swing out towards oncoming traffic during the parking manoeuvre.
- 

  Pay additional attention while reversing when this symbol is shown if a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is mounted and electrically connected to the car.

  Extinguished symbol indicates that the parking assistance sensors rearward are switched off and warn of any obstacles.

165 Park Assist System
166 Park Assist System

Park assist camera

IMPORTANT

- Objects e.g. chains, thin glossy poles or low barriers may be in the "signal shadow" and are then temporarily not detected by the sensors – the pulsating tone may then unexpectedly stop instead of changing over to the expected constant tone.

  The sensors cannot detect high objects, such as projecting loading docks.

  - In such situations, pay extra attention and manoeuvre/reposition the car particularly slowly or stop the current parking manoeuvre - there may be a high risk of damage to vehicles or other objects since information from the sensors is not always reliable in such situations.

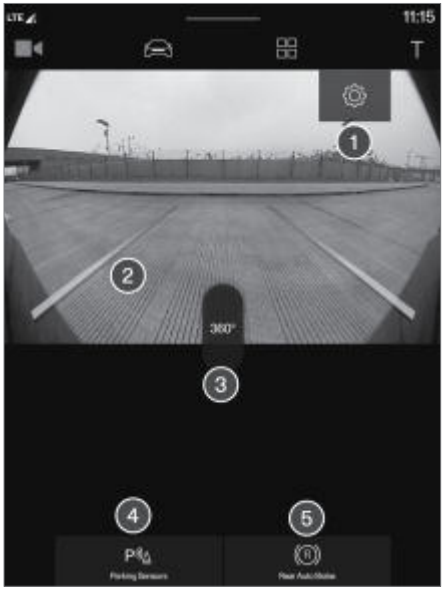
- In certain conditions the parking assistance system may produce incorrect warning signals that are caused by external sound sources with the same ultrasonic frequencies that the system works with.

  Examples of such sources include horns, wet tyres on asphalt, pneumatic brakes, exhaust noises from motorcycles, etc.

NOTE

When a towbar is configured with the car's electrical system, the protrusion of the towbar is included when the function measures the distance to objects behind the car.

The park assist cameras (PAC[167]) can display a composite 360° view* and separate views for each of the four cameras: rear, front*, left* or right* camera view. The cameras can be activated automatically or manually.



Example of camera view.

1. Settings
2. Park assist lines
3. Activates all cameras to provide 360° view*
4. Activates/deactivates parking assistance sensors
5. Activates/deactivates auto-brake while reversing*

The parking camera is a support function which is activated automatically when reverse gear is selected or manually in the centre display.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 300)
- Park assist camera locations and surveillance areas (p. 391)
- Park assist lines for park assist camera (p. 392)
- Sensor fields for parking assistance system (p. 394)
- Activate park assist camera (p. 395)
- Symbols and messages for parking climate control and park assist camera (p. 396)
- Park Assist (p. 384)
- Warning and auto-brake when reversing* (p. 381)
- Limitations for camera unit (p. 412)
- Limitations for radar device (p. 399)

WARNING

- The ability of the park assist cameras to clearly reproduce the environment in all areas around the car can be affected by the conditions during use.
- Pay particular attention if there are people and animals near the car.
- Bear in mind that the front of the car may swing out towards oncoming traffic during the parking manoeuvre.
- Objects/obstacles may be closer to the car than they appear to be on the screen.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Park assist camera locations and surveillance areas

The park assist cameras (PAC[168]) can display a composite 360° view* and separate views for each of the four cameras: rear, front*, left* or right* camera view. The cameras can be activated automatically or manually.

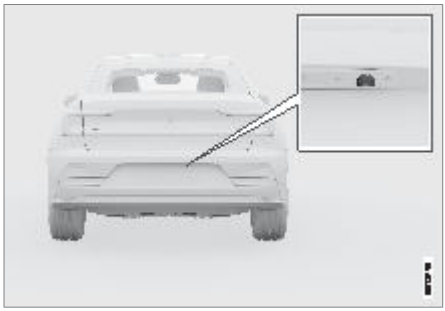
360° view*

Camera buttons for each direction of view. These buttons disappear after a short time without touching the screen.

The 360° view function activates all parking cameras, whereupon the four sides of the car are shown simultaneously in the centre display, which helps the driver to observe what is around the car when manoeuvring at low speed. From the 360° view, each camera view can be activated separately. Tap on the screen to show the camera symbols and select the desired view.

The forward and side camera views are not available when reverse is selected.

Backwards

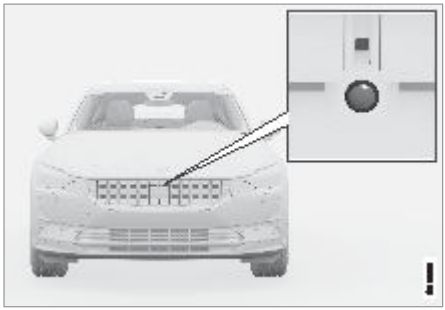


The backwards-facing camera is fitted above the registration plate.

The backward-facing camera shows a wide area behind the car. Part of the bumper may also be visible.

Objects shown in the centre display may appear slightly tilted — this is normal.

Forwards*



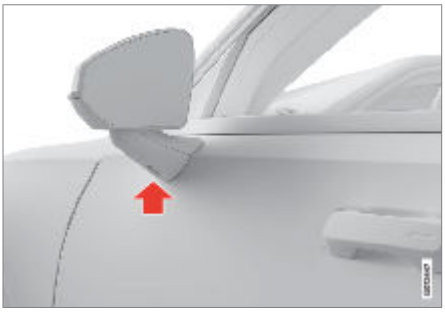
The forwards parking camera is located in the grille.

The front camera can be helpful on an exit road with limited visibility to the sides, e.g. when leaving a garage. It is active at speeds up to 25 km/h

(16 mph) - following which, the front camera is switched off.

If the car does not reach 50 km/h (30 mph) and the speed falls below 22 km/h (14 mph) within 1 minute after the forward-facing camera has been extinguished, the camera is reactivated.

The sides*



The side cameras are positioned in each door mirror.

The side cameras can show what is along each side of the car.

Related information

- Park assist camera (p. 389)
- Activate park assist camera (p. 395)
- Limitations for camera unit (p. 412)
- Limitations for radar device (p. 399)

Park assist lines for park assist camera

The parking cameras (PAC[169]) indicate the position of the car in relation to its surroundings by displaying lines on the screen.

Example of park assist lines

Park assist lines show the intended route for the car's external dimensions with the current steering wheel angle - this can facilitate parallel parking and reversing into tight spaces.

Park assist lines show the intended route for the car's external dimensions with the current steering wheel angle - this can facilitate parallel parking, reversing into tight spaces, and when connecting a trailer.

The lines on the screen are projected as if they were at ground level behind the car and respond directly to steering wheel movements, showing the driver the path the car will take - also when the car is turning.

169 Park Assist Camera

These park assist lines include the car's most protruding parts, e.g. door mirrors and corners.

These park assist lines include the car's most protruding parts, e.g. towbar, door mirrors, and corners.

Park assist lines in 360° view*

360° view with park assist lines

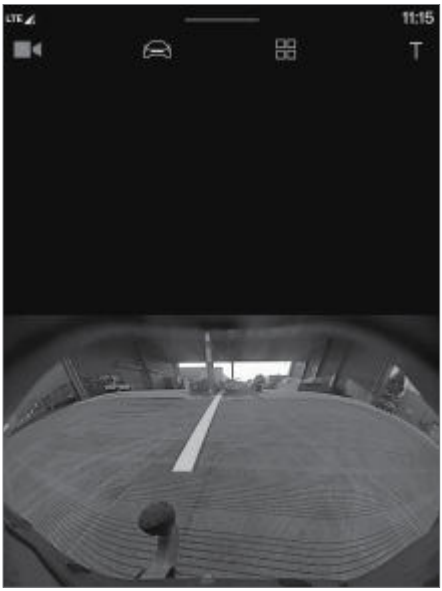
With the 360° view, park assist lines are shown behind, in front of and at the side of the car (depending on the direction of travel):

- When driving forwards: Front lines
- When reversing: Side lines and reversing lines

With front or rear camera selected, the park assist lines appear regardless of the car's direction of travel.

With one side camera selected, the park assist lines only appear when reversing.

Towbar park assist line



Towbar with park assist line

A park assist line for the towbar's intended trajectory can be shown and provide assistance when connecting a trailer. This is activated in the settings for the parking camera.

Park assist lines for the towbar and the whole of the car cannot be shown at the same time.

Related information

- Park assist camera (p. 389)
- Park assist camera locations and surveillance areas (p. 391)
- Towbar* (p. 485)
- Limitations for camera unit (p. 412)
- Limitations for radar device (p. 399)

Sensor fields for parking assistance system

IMPORTANT

- Remember, that with the rear camera view selected, the monitor only displays the area behind the car. Be aware of the sides and front of the car when manoeuvring in reverse.
- The same applies vice versa - note what happens to the rear parts of the car when the front camera view is selected.
- Note that the park assist lines show the shortest route. Therefore, pay extra attention to the car's sides so that they do not go against/over something when the steering wheel is turned when driving forward or that the front sweeps against/over something when the steering wheel is turned when reversing.

NOTE

- When reversing with a trailer that is not connected to the car's electrical system, the park assist lines on screen show you the route the car will take – not the trailer.
- The screen does not show park assist lines when a trailer is connected to the car's electrical system.

If the car is equipped with the Parking Assistance System (PAS[170]) then the distance is shown in the Parking Assistance Camera (PAC[171]) 360° view* with coloured fields for each sensor that registers an obstacle.

Sensor fields backwards and forwards

The screen can show coloured sensor fields on the car symbol.

The fields for the sensors for forwards and reverse change colour as the distance to the

170 Park Assist System
171 Park Assist Camera

obstacle decreases – from AMBER through ORANGE to RED.

Field colour reverse	Distance in metres (feet)
Yellow	0,6-1,5 (2,0-4,9)
Orange	0,3–0,6 (1,0–2,0)
Red	0-0,3 (0-1,0)

Field colour forwards	Distance in metres (feet)
Yellow	0,6–0,8 (2,0–2,6)
Orange	0,3–0,6 (1,0–2,0)
Red	0-0,3 (0-1,0)

For RED sensor fields, the pulsating acoustic signal changes over to a constant tone.

Related information

- Park Assist (p. 384)
- Park assist camera (p. 389)
- Park assist camera locations and surveillance areas (p. 391)
- Limitations for camera unit (p. 412)
- Limitations for radar device (p. 399)

WARNING

The sensor fields on the 360° symbol only show the direction of an obstacle's location. They do not show the distance to the obstacle.

Activate park assist camera

The park assist cameras (PAC[172]) are activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged or manually with the centre display's function button.

Camera view when reversing

When reverse gear is engaged, the screen shows the 360° view* if it or any of the side views* was the last used camera view, otherwise the rear view is shown.

When reverse gear is engaged, the screen shows the rear view[173].

Camera view for manual camera activation

Activate the parking camera with this button in the upper part of the centre display – the screen then shows the 360° view*.

Activate the parking camera with this button in the upper part of the centre display.

The screen then initially shows the last used camera view. The next time the car is started, the previously shown side view is replaced by the 360° view*.

- Button indication on – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button indication – the function is deactivated.

Automatic deactivation of camera

The front view extinguishes at 25 km/h (16 mph) to avoid distracting the driver – it reactivates automatically if the speed drops to 22 km/h

172 Park Assist Camera
173 In Canada, it is also possible to select the 360° view. The rear view is the default for the USA and Korea, and cannot be changed.

(14 mph) within 1 minute, on the condition that the speed has not exceeded 50 km/h (31 mph).

Other camera views are extinguished at 15 km/h (9 mph) and are not reactivated.

Related information

- Park assist camera (p. 389)
- Limitations of Parking assistance (p. 388)
- Limitations for camera unit (p. 412)
- Limitations for radar device (p. 399)

Symbols and messages for parking climate control and park assist camera

Symbols and messages for Park Assist System (PAS[174]) and Park Assist Camera (PAC[175]) can be shown in the centre display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	If the symbol is extinguished.	The rearward parking assistance sensors are deactivated, so there are no acoustic warnings and field marks for obstacles/objects.
	Cleaning needed Park Assist System sensors blocked	One or more of the function's sensors are blocked - check and correct as soon as possible.
	Park Assist System unavailable Service required	The system does not function as it should. Contact Polestar Customer Support.
	Park Assist System Reduced functionality Service required	The system does not function as it should. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message is still shown, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Defective park assist camera

If a camera sector is black and contains this symbol then it means that the camera is out of order.

174 Park Assist System
175 Park Assist Camera

The car's left-hand camera is out of order.

A black camera sector is also shown in the following instances, but then without the symbol for defective camera:

- open door

Related information

- Park assist camera (p. 389)
- Polestar support (p. 11)

WARNING

Pay additional attention while reversing when this symbol is shown if a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is mounted and electrically connected to the car.

Extinguished symbol indicates that the parking assistance sensors rearward are switched off and warn of any obstacles.

Radar units

The radar units are used by several driver support systems and monitor various areas around the car.

Location of front radar unit

Location of rear radar unit

Modifying radar units may make them illegal to use.

Do not install auxiliary lamps or similar in front of the grille as this can affect the function of the radar unit.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 300)
- Limitations for radar device (p. 399)
- Limitations for camera unit (p. 412)
- Recommended maintenance for radar units and parking sensors (p. 400)
- Symbols and messages for radar unit (p. 401)
- Type approval for radar device (p. 403)

Limitations for radar device

The radar unit has certain limitations - which in turn also limits those functions that use the unit. A driver should be aware about the following examples of limitations.

The camera and radar are aids for intelligent driving that cannot be called upon to achieve intelligent driving, and the necessary safety management must be implemented in order to avoid road safety risks or accidents caused by the driver's incorrect use of the camera and radar.

Blocked unit

The area in front of the radar unit must be cleaned on a regular basis and kept free from decals, objects, dirt, etc. – these could disrupt the radar-based functions. This may result functions being reduced, being switched off completely or giving incorrect function responses.

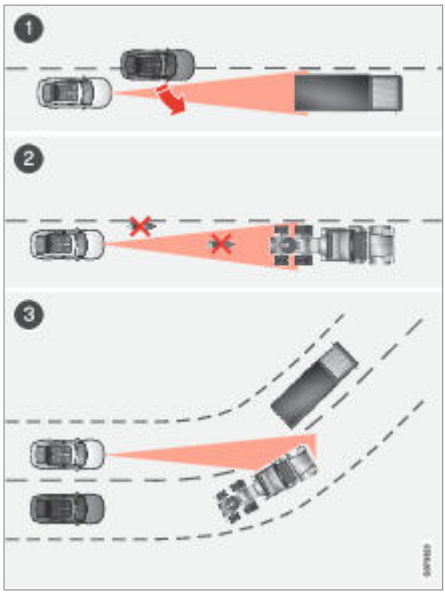
Wet snow or ice on the grille in front of the radar unit may disrupt radar-based functions. This may result functions being reduced, being switched off completely or giving incorrect function responses. The driver is always responsible for intervening in such a situation and maintaining a safe distance and speed.

Vehicle speed

The radar unit's ability to detect a vehicle ahead is greatly reduced if the speed of the vehicle ahead is very different to the speed of your own car.

Limited field of vision

The radar unit has a limited field of vision. In some situations another vehicle is not detected, or the detection is made later than expected.



The radar unit's field of vision

1. Sometimes the radar unit is late at detecting vehicles at close distances - e.g. a vehicle that drives in between your car and the vehicle ahead.
2. Small vehicles, such as motorcycles, or vehicles not driving in the centre of the lane can remain undetected.
3. In bends, the radar unit may detect a different vehicle than intended or lose a detected vehicle from view.

Do not fit anything in front of the radar unit such as auxiliary lamps, decals, etc., since these may disrupt radar-based functions. This may result functions being reduced, being switched off completely or giving incorrect function responses.

Recommended maintenance for radar units and parking sensors

Related information

- Radar units (p. 398)
- Recommended maintenance for radar units and parking sensors (p. 400)
- Polestar support (p. 11)

For the radar units and sensors to function correctly, they must be kept clear of dirt, ice and snow, and be cleaned regularly with water and car shampoo.

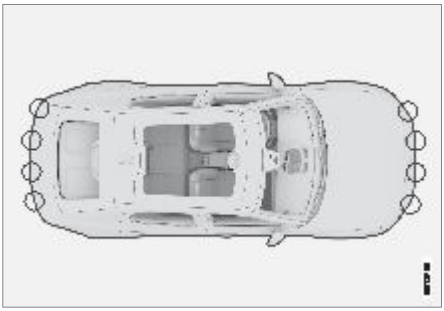
It is important that the surfaces in front of the radar units and sensors are kept clean. Do not affix any objects, tape or labels in the area of the sensors.

Location of the radar units

Location of front radar unit

Location of rear radar unit

Location of the parking sensors



Location of the parking sensors

Related information

- Radar units (p. 398)
- Limitations for radar device (p. 399)
- Limitations for camera unit (p. 412)
- Polestar support (p. 11)

IMPORTANT

Driver support components must only be maintained at a workshop – contact Polestar Customer Support.

NOTE

Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may cause incorrect warning signals, reduced or no function.

Symbols and messages for radar unit

Here are examples of some of the messages and symbols relating to the radar unit that may be shown in the driver display.

Sensor blocked

If the driver display shows this symbol and the message Radar sensor front Sensor blocked See Manual, this means that the radar unit cannot detect other vehicles, cyclists, pedestrians and large animals in front of the car, and that the car's radar-based functions may be disrupted.

The following table presents examples of possible causes for a message being shown, along with the appropriate action:

Cause	Action
The surface in front of the radar unit is dirty or covered with ice or snow.	Clean the surface in front of the radar unit.
Heavy rain or snow block the radar signals.	No action. Sometimes the unit does not work during heavy rain or snowfall.
Water or snow from the road surface swirls up and blocks the radar signals.	No action. Sometimes the unit does not work on a very wet or snow-covered road surface.

Related information

- Radar units (p. 398)
- Polestar support (p. 11)

Type approval for radar device

Here you can find type approval for the car's radar units for adaptive cruise control* (ACC[176]), Pilot Assist* and BLIS*[177].

For information on certificates for radio frequency, go to polestar.com.

Market	ACC & PA	BLIS	Symbol	Type approval
Botswana	✓			BOCRA/TA2019/4981
		✓		BOCRA/TA/2017/3372
Brazil	✓			Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados. 06354-19-12386
		✓		Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados. 03563-17-05364

176 Adaptive Cruise Control
177 Blind Spot Information

Market	ACC & PA	BLIS	Symbol	Type approval
Europe	✓			Hereby, Veoneer US, Inc. declares that the radio equipment type 77V12FLR is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. Operational frequency band: 76-77 GHz Maximum Output Power: <55dBm EIRP The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory Manufacturer: Veoneer US, Inc. 26360 American Drive Southfield, MI 48034 USA Phone: +1-248-223-0600
		✓		Hereby, Hella KgaA Hueck & Co. Declares that the radio equipment type RS4 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: www.hella.com/vcc. Technical information: Frequency range: 24.05 ... 24.25 GHz Transmission power: 20 dBm (maximum) EIRP Manufacturer and Address: Manufacturer: Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. Address: Rixbecker Straße 75, 59552 Lippstadt, Germany
The United Arab Emirates (UAE)	✓			REGISTERED No: ER72325/19 DEALER No: 0020858/10
		✓		Registered No: ER53878/17 Dealer No: DA44932/15
Ghana	✓			NCA Approved: ZRO-1H-7E3-145
		✓		NCA Approved: 1R3-1M-7E1-0B7

Market	ACC & PA	BLIS	Symbol	Type approval
Indonesia		✓		Certificate number: 50459/SDPPI/2017 Country of origin Germany Certificate number: 53578/SDPPI/2017 Country of origin China PLG ID: 6051
	✓			Certificate number: 79866/SDPPI/2022 13809
Japan	✓			This device is granted pursuant to the Japanese Radio Law under the grant ID n° : R 215-JRA003 This device should not be modified (otherwise the granted designation number will become invalid). 本製品は、電波法に基づく特定無線設備の技術基準適合証明などを 受けております。 認証番号: R 215-JRA003 本製品の改造は禁止されています。 （適合証明番号などが無効とな ります。）
		✓		This device is granted pursuant to the Japanese Radio Law under the grant ID n° : R 204-750001 This device should not be modified (otherwise the granted designation number will become invalid). 本製品は、電波法に基づく特定無線設備の技術基準適合証明などを 受けております。 認証番号: R 204-750001 本製品の改造は禁止されています。 （適合証明番号などが無効とな ります。）

Market	ACC & PA	BLIS	Symbol	Type approval
China		✓		车辆驾驶辅助雷达系统型号： RS4 型 微功率短距无线电传送设备分类：H 类 频率范围：24.05-24.25GHz 放射功率: 20mW （等效全向辐射功率） 天线类型：集成型微带贴片阵列天线 用户控制：不可 不得擅自更改发射频率、加发射功率（包括额外加装射频功率放大器）， 不得擅自外接天线或改用其它发射天线 使用时不得对各种合法的无线电通信业务产生有害干扰；一旦发现有干扰现象时， 应立即停止使用， 并采取措施消除干扰后方可继续使用 使用微功率无线电设备， 必须耐受各种无线电业务的干扰或工业、科学及医疗应用设备的辐射干扰 不得在飞机和机场附近使用。
Malaysia	✓		MCMC ABCD12345678	HIDF15000171 Model: 77V12FLR Brand: Veoneer US, Inc.
		✓		CID F 15000578
Morocco	✓			AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d´agrément: MR_20098_ANRT_2019 Date d´agrément: 2019_06_14

Market	ACC & PA	BLIS	Symbol	Type approval
	✓			IFT: RLVVE7719-1064 La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones: (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.
Mexico		✓		Radar de corto alcance RS4 Hella KGaA Hueck & Co IFETEL: RLVHERS17-0286 La operación de este equipo esta sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones: (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.
Moldova	✓	✓	024	
Nigeria	✓	✓		Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission.
Oman	✓		OMAN TRA	Registered No: R/7713/19 Dealer No: D172338
		✓		Registered No: R/3957/17 Dealer No: D080134

Market	ACC & PA	BLIS	Symbol	Type approval
Paraguay	✓			NR: 2019-07-I-0397
Serbia	✓			И011 19
		✓		И011 17
Singa-pore	✓			DA 106706
		✓		DA 103238
UK	✓			Hereby, Veoneer US, Inc. declares that the radio equipment type 77V12FLR is in compliance with radio regulation 2017. Operational frequency band: 76 – 77 GHz/ Maximum output power: < 55 dBm e.i.r.p www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory
South Africa	✓			TA-2019/1378APPROVED
		✓		TA-2016/3407APPROVED
South Korea	✓			R-C-1VN-77V12FLR
		✓		R-CMM-HLA-RS4 이 기기는 업무용(A급) 전자파 적합기기로서 판 매자 또는 사용 자는 이 점을 주의하시기 바 라며, 가정외의 지역에서 사용 하는 것을 목적으 로 합니다

Market	ACC & PA	BLIS	Symbol	Type approval
Taiwan	✓			CCAI19LP2310T1 警語 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機,非經許可,公司、商號或使用者均不得擅 自變更頻率、加 大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信;經發現有干擾現象 時,應立即停用 ,並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。 前項合法通信,指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。 低功率射頻電機須忍受合 法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾
		✓		CCAB17LP0470T5 警語 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機,非經許可,公司、商號或使用者均不得擅 自變更頻率、加 大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信;經發現有干擾現象 時,應立即停用 ,並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。 前項合法通信,指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。 低功率射頻電機須忍受合 法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾
Thailand	✓	✓		1) เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้มีความสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานหรือข้อกำหนดของ กสทช. 2) เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้มีระดับการแผ่คลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าสอดคล้องตาม มาตรฐานความปลอดภัยต่อสุขภาพของมนุษย์จากการใช้เครื่องวิทยุ คมนาคมที่คณะกรรมการกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติประกาศ กำหนด
Ukraine	✓			UA RF: 1VEON2FLR справжнім VEONEER US, INC. заявляє, що тип радіообладнання 77V12FLR відповідає Технічному регламенту радіообладнання; повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на веб-сайті за такою адресою: https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory
		✓		Цим HELLA GmbH & Co. KGaA заявляє, що радіотехнічне обладнання типу RS4 відповідає Технічному регламенту радіотехнічного обладнання та Директиві 2014/53/ЄС. Повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний за адресою: www.hella.com/vcc Частотний діапазон: 24,05 – 24,25 ГГц Потужність передачі: 20 дБм (макс.) EIRP

Market	ACC & PA	BLIS	Symbol	Type approval
Vietnam	✓			77V12FLR
		✓		C0173191017AF04A2
Zambia	✓			ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2019/6/61
		✓		ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2017/6/7

Market	ACC & PA	BLIS	Type approval
Canada	✓		IC: 8436B-77V12FLR
		✓	IC:2694A-RS4
USA	✓		FCC ID: WU877V12FLR
		✓	FCC ID: NBG01RS4

Canada

This device contains license-exempt transmitter(s)/receiver(s) that comply with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's license exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause interference.

(2) This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

L'emetteur/recepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le present appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Developpement economique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisee aux deux conditions suivantes :

1) L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;

2) L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioelectrique subi, meme si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

USA

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

CAUTION TO USERS

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user`s authority to operate the equipment.

Type approval for radio equipment

Market	Symbol	Type approval
Europe		Polestar hereby declares that all radio equipment is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU.

Contact Polestar Customer Support for detailed information on type approval.

Related information

- Radar units (p. 398)
- Polestar support (p. 11)

Camera unit

The camera unit is used by several driver support systems and has the task of for example detecting lane lines or traffic signs.

Location of the camera unit

The camera unit is used by the following functions:

- Adaptive cruise control*
- Pilot Assist*
- Lane assistance
- Assistance at risk of collision
- Driver Alert Control
- Road Sign Information
- Active main beam
- Park Assist
- Ready to drive notification

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 300)
- Limitations for camera unit (p. 412)
- Limitations for radar device (p. 399)
- Recommended maintenance for camera unit (p. 414)
- Symbols and messages for camera unit (p. 415)

Limitations for camera unit

The camera unit has certain limitations - which in turn also limits those functions that use the unit. A driver should be aware about the following examples of limitations.

Blocked unit

The area in front of the camera unit must be cleaned on a regular basis and kept free from decals, objects, dirt, etc. – these could disrupt the camera-based functions. This may result functions being reduced, being switched off completely or giving incorrect function responses.

High temperature

At very high temperatures the camera unit can be temporarily switched off for about 15 minutes after the car is started so as to protect the unit's electronics. The camera unit restarts automatically when the temperature has fallen sufficiently.

Damaged windscreen

The following is also applicable so as not to risk incorrect function of the driver supports that use the camera unit:

- If a scratch, crack or stone chip appears on the windscreen in front of any of the "windows" for the camera unit and covers an area of approx. 0.5 × 3.0 mm (0.02 × 0.12 inches) or more, Polestar Customer Support must be contacted so that the windscreen can be replaced.
- Polestar recommends not repairing cracks, scratches or stone chips in the area in front of the camera unit – the entire windscreen should be replaced instead.
- Before replacing a windscreen, contact Polestar Customer Support to verify that the correct windscreen has been ordered and will be fitted.

- The same type of windscreen wipers or windscreen wipers approved by Polestar must be fitted when the windscreen is replaced.
- When replacing the windscreen, the camera unit must be recalibrated by a workshop in order to ensure the functionality of all of the car's camera-based systems. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

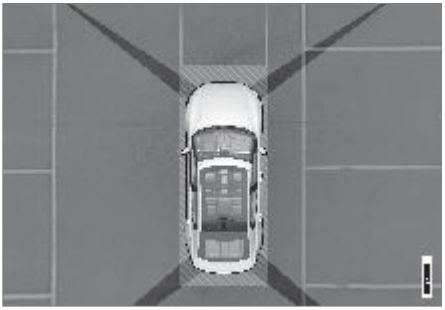
Impaired vision

The cameras have limitations similar to the human eye, i.e. may "see" worse in for example intense snowfall or rain, dense fog, heavy dust storms and snow flurries. Under such conditions, the functions of camera-dependent systems could be significantly reduced or temporarily disengaged.

Strong oncoming light, reflections in the carriageway, snow or ice on the road surface, dirty road surfaces or unclear lane markings can also significantly reduce camera function when it is used to scan the carriageway to detect pedestrians, cyclists, large animals and other vehicles.

Bicycle racks or other accessories mounted at the rear of the car may obscure the camera's view.

Blind sectors



There are "blind" sectors between the cameras' fields of vision.

In the parking camera's 360° view, obstacles/objects may "vanish" in the gaps between the individual cameras.

Light conditions

The camera image is adjusted automatically according to prevailing light conditions. Because of this, the image may vary slightly in brightness and quality. Poor light conditions can result in reduced image quality.

Related information

- Camera unit (p. 412)
- Recommended maintenance for camera unit (p. 414)
- Limitations for radar device (p. 399)
- Park assist camera (p. 389)
- Polestar support (p. 11)

WARNING

Pay attention to the possibility that, even if it only looks like a relatively small part of the image is obscured, a relatively large sector could be hidden from view. An obstacle could therefore go undetected until the car is very close to it.

NOTE

If not rectified it can lead to reduced performance for the driver support systems that use the camera unit. This may result functions being reduced, being switched off completely or giving incorrect function responses.

Recommended maintenance for camera unit

In order that the camera unit shall function correctly, it must be kept clear of dirt, ice and snow, and be cleaned regularly with water and car shampoo.

The marked area must be cleaned on a regular basis and kept free from decals, objects, dirt, etc. – these could disrupt the camera-based functions. This may result functions being reduced, being switched off completely or giving incorrect function responses.

- To ensure best possible functionality, the surfaces in front of the sensors must be kept clean.
- Do not affix any objects, tape or labels in the area of the sensors.

IMPORTANT

Driver support components must only be maintained at a workshop – contact Polestar Customer Support.

NOTE

Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may cause incorrect warning signals, reduced or no function.

Related information

- Camera unit (p. 412)
- Limitations for camera unit (p. 412)
- Park assist camera (p. 389)
- Polestar support (p. 11)

Symbols and messages for camera unit

Here are examples of some of the messages and symbols relating to the camera unit that may be shown in the driver display.

Sensor blocked

If the driver display shows this symbol and the message Windscreen sensor blocked See Manual, this means that the camera unit cannot detect other vehicles, cyclists, pedestrians and large animals in front of the car, and that the car's camera-based functions may be disrupted.

The following table presents examples of possible causes for a message being shown, along with the appropriate action:

Cause	Action
The windscreen surface in front of the camera unit is dirty or covered with ice or snow.	Clean dirt, ice and snow from the windscreen surface in front of the camera unit.
Thick fog and heavy rain or snow block the camera view.	No action. Sometimes the unit does not work during heavy rain or snowfall.
Water or snow from the road surface swirls up and blocks the camera view.	No action. Sometimes the unit does not work on a very wet or snow-covered road surface.
Dirt has entered between the inside of the windscreen and the camera unit.	Cleaning the windscreen inside the unit cover is necessary – contact Polestar Customer Support.
Strong oncoming light	No action. The camera unit is reset automatically in more favourable light conditions.

Related information

- Camera unit (p. 412)
- Limitations for camera unit (p. 412)
- Polestar support (p. 11)

Type approval for antenna

The type approval for the car's antenna can be found here.

For information on certificates for radio frequency, go to polestar.com.

Continental
Model: TCAM1NA0
FCC ID:KR5TCAM1NA0
IC:7812D–TCAM1NA0

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes : (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

This device complies with FCC/ISED radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines and RSS-102 of the ISED radio frequency (RF) Exposure rules. This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. The antenna should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 2.4 cm between the radiator and your body.

Le présent appareil est conforme à l'exposition aux radiations FCC / ISED définies pour un environnement non contrôlé et répond aux directives d'exposition de la fréquence de la FCC radiofréquence (RF) et RSS-102 de la fréquence radio (RF) ISED règles d'exposition. L'émetteur ne doit pas être colocalisé ni fonctionner conjointement avec à autre antenne ou autre émetteur.L'antenne doit être installée de façon à garder une distance minimale de 2.4 centimètres entre la source de rayonnements et votre corps.

FCC Class B digital device notice

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Continental Automotive GmbH has not approved any changes or modifications to this device by the user. Any changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Continental Automotive GmbH n'approuve aucune modification apportée à l'appareil par l'utilisateur, quelle qu'en soit la nature. Tout changement ou modification peuvent annuler le droit d'utilisation de l'appareil par l'utilisateur.

CAN ICES-3 (B) / NMB-3 (B)

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de classe B est conforme à la norme canadienne ICES-003.